LONGMANS'

SCHOOL COMPOSITION

BY

DAVID SALMON

NEW YORK AND LONDON
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
1890

WORKS BY DAVID SALMON.

LONGMANS' SCHOOL GRAMMAR. Part I., Parts of Speech; Part II., Classification and Inflexion; Part III., Analysis of Sentences; Part IV., History and Derivation. With Notes for Teachers and Index. 272 pages. 12mo. .. 75 cents.

'This is a better book by far than any in common use in this country, with the possible exception of Professor Whitney's Essentials, and the latter is not so full. The present "grammar" begins with induction, but passes immediately to deduction, and both methods are employed throughout, each induction leading to new deductions. Hence it is thoroughly logical and scientific, though the author would probably claim to be a teacher and grammarian rather than a scientist. He has produced one of the best working grammars we have ever seen, and this applies to all its parts. It is excellently arranged and perfectly graded. Part IV., on History and Derivation, is as beautiful and interesting as it is valuable—but this might be said of the whole book.'—NEW YORK TEACHER.

LONGMANS' JUNIOR SCHOOL GRAMMAR. Fcp. 8vo. 128 pp. .. .. 30 cents.

Part I. Parts of Speech.
Part II. Parsing.

LONGMANS' JUNIOR SCHOOL COMPOSITION. Fcp. 8vo. .. .. 30 cents.

This Book contains:—Synthesis of Simple Sentences; Practice in the Synthesis of Simple Sentences; Sentences combined; Punctuation.

Easy Narratives: (*a*) Stories to be reproduced.
(*b*) Skeletons of Stories to be reproduced.
(*c*) Stories in verse to be written in prose.

Easy Essays: Letters; Grammar (Typical Errors); Notes for Teachers, &c.

LONGMANS' SCHOOL COMPOSITION. Crown 8vo. 80 cents.

SIR ROGER DE COVERLEY: Essays from the 'Spectator.' With Notes and Illustrations. Crown 8vo. .. 45 cents.

New York: LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO.

CONTENTS

JUNIOR

SENIOR

LONGMANS' SCHOOL COMPOSITION.

JUNIOR.

SYNTHESIS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.[1]

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

1. The sentence 'Mary writes' consists of two parts:—

(1) The name of the person of whom we are speaking,—*Mary*
and
(2) What we say about Mary,—*writes*.

2. Similarly the sentence 'Fire burns' consists of two parts:—

(1) The name of the thing of which we are speaking,—*fire*.
(2) What we say about fire,—*burns*.

3. Every sentence has two such parts.

4. The name of the person or thing spoken about is called the **Subject.**

5. What is said about the Subject is called the **Predicate.**

Exercise 1.

Pick out the Subjects and the Predicates.

William sings. Birds fly. Sheep bleat. Henry is reading. Rain is falling. Rain has fallen. Stars are shining. Stars were shining. Cattle

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 1.

are grazing. Soldiers are watching. Soldiers watched. Soldiers were watched. School is closed. Donkeys bray. Donkeys were braying. I am writing. We are reading.

Exercise 2.

Place Predicates (Verbs) after the following Subjects :—

Baby. Babies. Lightning. Flowers. Soldiers. Lions. Bees. Gas. The sun. The wind. The eagle. Eagles. The ship. Ships. The master. The scholars. The cat. Cats. Bakers. A butcher. The moon. The stars. Carpenters. The carpenter. The mower. Porters. Ploughmen. I. We.

Exercise 3.

Place Subjects before the following Predicates :—

Mew. Chatter. Grunt. Ran. Hum. Fly. Howl. Is walking. Plays. Played. Fell. Whistled. Shrieked. Sings. Sing. Sang. Sleeps. Slept. Bark. Barks. Cried. Bloom. Laughed. Soar. Swim. Swam. Was swimming. Dawns. Dawned. Gallops. Roar.

Subject, Predicate, and Object.

6. The Predicate always is or contains a Verb. In many sentences the Predicate is a Verb alone. When it is a Verb in the Active Voice, it has an **Object**, thus :—

Subject.	*Predicate.*	*Object.*
Parents	love	children.
Children	obey	parents.
Cats	catch	mice.
Mice	fear	cats.

Exercise 4.

Pick out the Subjects, Predicates, and Objects.

Soldiers fight battles. Tom missed Fred. Mary is minding baby. Job showed patience. Abraham had faith. Romulus founded Rome. Titus captured Jerusalem. Arthur loves father. Walter threw a stone. Tom broke a window. The servant swept the room. Masons build houses. The girl is milking the cow. The dog bit the beggar. Artists paint pictures. I am expecting a letter. We have won prizes.

Exercise 5.

Supply Predicates.

A poet . . . . poems. The smith . . . . the iron. Horses . . . . carts. Cows . . . . grass. Cats . . . . milk. The sexton . . . . the bell. The horse . . . . the groom. Grocers . . . . sugar. The hounds . . . . the fox. Birds . . . . nests. The gardener . . . . the flowers. Miss Wilson . . . . a ballad. Horses . . . . hay. The dog . . . . the thief. The banker . . . . a purse. Tailors . . . . coats. Brewers . . . . beer. The girl . . . . a rose.

Exercise 6.

Supply Objects.

The servant broke . . . . The cook made . . . . The hunter killed . . . . Farmers till . . . . Soldiers fight . . . . Tom missed . . . . Mary is minding . . . . Romulus founded . . . . Titus captured . . . . Cæsar invaded . . . . The gardener sowed . . . . Somebody stole . . . . Artists paint . . . . The sailor lost. . . . Children learn . . . . Authors write . . . . Farmers grow . . . . Birds build . . . . I admire . . . . We like . . . . I hurt . . . .

Exercise 7.

Supply Subjects.

. . . . dusted the room. . . . . is drawing a load. . . . . loves me. . . . . met Tom. . . . . caught the thief. . . . . grow flowers. . . . . bit the beggar. . . . . won the prize. . . . . has lost the dog. . . . . has killed a cat. . . . . felled a tree. . . . . are singing songs. . . . . is making a pudding. . . . . is expecting a letter. . . . . gives light. . . . . makes shoes. . . . . sold a book. . . . . like him. . . . . likes him.

Enlarged Subject.

7. Subjects may be enlarged by **Adjuncts**. Thus the sentence 'Boys work' may, by additions to the Subject, become

The boys work.
These boys work.
Good boys work.
My boys work.
The good boys *of the village* work.
The good boys *of the village, wishing to please their master*, work.

Exercise 8.

Pick out the Subject and its Adjuncts.

Tom's brother has arrived. The careless boy will be punished. The laws of the land have been broken. The sweet flowers are blooming. The poor slave is crying. The boat, struck by a great wave, sank. The little child, tired of play, is sleeping. A short letter telling the good news has been sent.

Exercise 9.

Add Adjuncts to each Subject.

Birds fly. Sheep bleat. Stars are shining. Cattle are grazing. Soldiers are watching. Donkeys bray. Lightning is flashing. The sun is shining. The scholars are studying. The ploughman is whistling. Monkeys chatter. Pigs grunt. The lark is soaring. Lions roar.

Enlarged Object.

8. Objects, like Subjects, may be enlarged by Adjuncts. Thus the sentence 'Boys learn lessons' may, by additions to the Object, become

Boys learn *the* lessons.
Boys learn *their* lessons.
Boys learn *home* lessons.
Boys learn *difficult* lessons.
Boys learn lessons *about Verbs.*
Boys learn *the* lessons *set by Mr. Edwards.*
Boys learn *the difficult home* lessons *about Verbs set by Mr. Edwards.*

Exercise 10.

Pick out the Object and its Adjuncts.

The servant dusted every room. Fred loves his sweet little sister. We have rented a house at Barmouth. He sang a song about the bailiff's daughter of Islington. We saw our neighbour's new Shetland pony. I am reading a book written by my father. The policeman caught the man accused of theft. The gardener is hoeing the potatoes planted by him in the early spring.

Exercise 11.

Add Adjuncts to each Object.

The soldiers fought battles. Mary is minding baby. Walter threw a stone. Tom broke a window. The servant swept the room. The girl is milking the cow. The dog bit the beggar. The artist painted pictures. I am expecting a letter. We have won prizes. The fire destroyed houses. The general gained a victory. The engineer made a railway. The children drowned the kittens. We have bought books. He teaches geography.

Enlarged Predicate.

9. Predicates, like Subjects and Objects, may be enlarged by Adjuncts. Thus the sentence 'Boys work' may, by additions to the Predicate, become

Boys work *diligently.*
Boys work *now.*
Boys work *in school.*
Boys work *to please their teacher.*
Boys work *diligently now in school to please their teacher.*

Exercise 12.

Pick out Predicate and its Adjuncts.

Tom's brother will come to-morrow. The careless girl was looking off her book. The laws of the land were often broken by the rude mountaineers. Pretty flowers grow in my garden all through the spring. The poor slave was crying bitterly over the loss of his child. The corn is waving in the sun. The great bell was tolling slowly for the death of the prince. The trees are bowing before the strong wind. I am going to London with my father next week.

Exercise 13.

Add Adjuncts to each Predicate in Exercises 8–11.

Verbs of Incomplete Predication.

10. Some Verbs do not convey a complete idea, and therefore cannot be Predicates by themselves. Such Verbs are called

Verbs of Incomplete Predication, and the words added to complete the Predicate are called the **Complement.**

Examples of Verbs of Incomplete Predication.

Subject.	*Predicate.*	
	Verb of Incomplete Predication.	*Complement.*
London	is	a great city.
William	was	Duke of Normandy.
The man	became	rich.

Exercise 14.

a. *Pick out the Verbs of Incomplete Predication and the Complements.*

Thou art the man. I am he. It is good. He is here. The house is to be sold. The horse is in the stable. The gun was behind the door. Jackson is a very good gardener. Those buds will be pretty flowers. Old King Cole was a merry old soul. I'm the chief of Ulva's isle. William became King of England. The girl seems to be very happy. The general was made Emperor of Rome.

b. *Supply Complements.*

London is . . . . Paris is . . . . Jerusalem was . . . . The boy will be . . . . He has become . . . . We are . . . . I am . . . . He was . . . . Richard became . . . . The prisoners are . . . . The man was . . . . Those birds are . . . . Grass is . . . . Homer was . . . . The child was . . . . The sun is . . . . The stars are . . . . The sheep were . . . .

PRACTICE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

11. A sentence when written should always begin with a capital letter, and nearly always end with a full stop.

A sentence which is a question ends with a note of interrogation (?), and one which is an exclamation ends with a note of admiration or exclamation (!).

Exercise 15.

Make sentences about

Fire. The sun. The moon. The sea. Bread. Butter. Cheese. Wool. Cotton. Linen. Boots. Hats. A coat. The table. The window. The desk. Pens. Ink. Paper. Pencils. Lead. Iron. Tin. Copper. Gold. Silver. A knife. The clock. Books. Coal. The servant. A chair. Breakfast. Dinner. Supper. The apple. The pear. Oranges. Lemons. Water. Milk. Coffee. Tea. Cocoa. Maps. Pictures.

Exercise 16.

Make sentences introducing the following pairs of words :—

Fire, grate. Sun, earth. Moon, night. Bread, flour. Pen, steel. Wool, sheep. Cotton, America. Boots, leather. Ink, black. Paper, rags. Walk, fields. Pair, gloves. Learning, to paint. Brother, arm. Wheel, cart. London, Thames. Bristol, Avon. Dublin, Ireland. Paris, France. Columbus, America. Shakespeare, poet. Threw, window. Useful, metal. Carpet, new. Wall, bricklayer. Road, rough. Lock, cupboard. Jug, full. Britain, island. Pencils, made. Drew, map.

Exercise 17.

Write complete sentences in answer to the following questions :—

[EXAMPLE. *Question.* What is your name ?
Answer. My name is John Smith.
If you said simply 'John Smith' your answer would not be a complete sentence.]

What is your name ? When were you born ? How old are you ? Where do you live? How long have you lived there? What school do you attend?

Of what games are you fond? During what part of the year is football played? And cricket? And lawn-tennis? Are you learning Latin? And French? And German? Can you swim? And row? And ride? And play the piano? Do you like the sea? Have you ever been on the sea? Have you read 'Robinson Crusoe'? What is the first meal of the day? And the second? And the third? Where does the sun rise? And set? How many days are there in a week? And in a year? And in leap year? How often does leap year come?

Exercise 18.

Make three sentences about each of the following :—

The place where you live. England. London. The River Thames. France. India. Australia. America. A horse. A cow. A dog. A sheep. A lion. A tiger. Spring. Summer. Autumn. Winter. The sun. The moon. Stars. Holidays. Boys' games. Girls' games. A railway. A steam-engine. The sea. A ship. Flowers. Fruits. A garden. Wool. Cotton. Leather. Silk. Water. Milk. Rice. Wheat. Books. Tea. Coffee. Sugar. Cocoa. Paper. Houses. Bricks. Stone. A field. Guns. A watch. A farm. Knives. Bees. Shell-fish. Fresh-water fish. Coal. Glass. Gas. The United States. New York. The Mississippi. Canada. Indians.

Exercise 19.

Combine each of the following sets of facts into a sentence [1] *:—*

a. *Name.*	*What he was.*	*Where born.*	*When born.*
Joseph Addison	Essayist	Milston, Wiltshire	1672
William Blake	Poet and painter	London	1757
John Bunyan	Author of 'The Pilgrim's Progress'	Elstow, Bedfordshire	1628
Lord Byron	Great English poet	London	1788
Geoffry Chaucer	Great English poet	London (probably)	About 1344
Thomas Carlyle	Historian and essayist	Ecclefechan, Dumfriesshire	1795
George Washington	First President of the United States	Virginia	1732

[1] Thus :—*Joseph Addison was born at Milston in Wiltshire, in the year* 1672.

b. *Name.*	*What he was.*	*Where he died.*	*When he died.*
Matthew Arnold	Poet and essayist	Liverpool	1888
Daniel Defoe	Author of 'Robinson Crusoe'	London	1731
Henry Fielding	Novelist	Lisbon	1754
Henry Hallam	Historian	Penshurst	1859
[illegible]-Shake-	Greatest English poet	Stratford-on-Avon	1616
[illegible]ohn Locke	Philosopher	Oates, Essex	1704

c. *Battle.*	*Date.*	*Between.*	*Victor.*
[1] Senlac, near Hastings	1066	English and Normans	Normans
Bannockburn	1314	English and Scotch	Scotch
Cressy	1346	English and French	English
Waterloo	1815	English and French	English
Marston Moor	1644	Royalists and Parliamentarians	Parliamentarians
Culloden	1746	The army of George II. and the Jacobites	The army of George II.

d. *Event.*	*Place.*	*Date.*	*Person.*
Printing introduced into England		1476	William Caxton
Discovery of America		1492	Christopher Columbus
Defeat of the Spanish Armada	English Channel	1588	Howard, Drake, and others
Gunpowder Plot	Westminster	1605	Guy Fawkes and others
Conquest of England		1066	William, Duke of Normandy
Execution of Charles I.	Whitehall	1649	

[1] These facts should be combined into sentences in various ways, thus :—
The Normans defeated the English at Senlac, near Hastings, in the year 1066.
The English were defeated by the Normans at Senlac, near Hastings, in the year 1066.
In the year 1066, *at Senlac, near Hastings, the Normans beat the English, &c., &c.*

SENTENCES COMBINED.

12. A number of simple sentences may sometimes be combined so as to form one; thus:—

Simple sentences.	*Sentence formed by combining them.*
The girl was little. She lost her doll. The doll was pretty. It was new. She lost it yesterday. She lost it in the afternoon.	The little girl lost her pretty new doll yesterday afternoon.

13. The combined sentence tells us as much as the separate sentences, and tells it in a shorter, clearer, and more pleasing way.

Exercise 20.

Combine, as in Par. **12**, *the following sets of sentences:—*

1. The man is tall. He struck his head. He was entering a carriage. The carriage was low.
2. Tom had a slate. It was new. He broke it. He broke it this morning.
3. The cow is black. She is grazing. She is grazing in a meadow. The meadow is beside the river.
4. The apples are ripe. They grow in an orchard. The orchard is Mr. Brown's.
5. The corn is green. It is waving. The breeze causes it to wave. The breeze is gentle.
6. The father is kind. He bought some clothes. The clothes were new. He bought them for the children. The children were good.
7. The boy was careless. He made blots. The blots were big. They were made on his book. The book was clean.
8. The bucket was old. It was made of oak. It fell. It fell into the well. The well was deep.
9. Polly Flinders was little. She sat. She sat among the cinders. She was warming her toes. Her toes were pretty. They were little.
10. Tom Tucker is little. He is singing. He is singing for his supper.
11. There were three wise men. They lived at Gotham. They went to sea. They went in a bowl.
12. The man came. He was the man in the moon. He came down soon. He came too soon.

13. I saw ships. There were three. They came sailing. They sailed by. I saw them on Christmas day. I saw them in the morning.
14. Cole was a king. He was old. He was a merry soul.
15. A great battle began. It was between the English and the Scotch. It began next morning. It began at break of day. It was at Bannockburn.

14. Sentences are often combined by means of Conjunctions or other connecting words.

15. Sentences are combined, by means of the Conjunction *and*, thus:—

Separate sentences.	*Combined sentences.*
1. The boy is good. The boy is clever. 2. William is going to school. John is going to school. 3. I admire my teacher. I love my teacher.	1. The boy is good and clever. 2. William and John are going to school. 3. I admire and love my teacher.

16. Note the use of the comma when more than two words or sets of words are joined by *and*:—

I met Fred, Will and George.

Faith, Hope and Charity are sometimes called the Christian Graces.

I bought a pound of tea, two pounds of coffee, ten pounds of sugar and a peck of flour.

17. The comma is used in the same way with *or*.

Exercise 21.

Combine the following sets of sentences by means of the Conjunction **and**:—

1. Jack went up the hill. Jill went up the hill.
2. The lion beat the unicorn. The lion drove the unicorn out of town.
3. Edward is honest. Edward is truthful.
4. The child is tired. The child is sleepy.
5. Tom will pay us a visit. Ethel will pay us a visit. Their parents will pay us a visit.
6. The grocer sells tea. He sells coffee. He sells sugar.
7. Maud deserves the prize. She will get it.

8. Coal is a mineral. Iron is a mineral. Copper is a mineral. Lead is a mineral.

9. The boy worked hard. He got on.

10. Little drops of water, little grains of sand make the mighty ocean. Little drops of water, little grains of sand make the pleasant land.

18. Sentences are combined by means of the Conjunction *or*, thus :—

Separate sentences.	*Combined sentences.*
1. The boy is lazy. The boy is stupid.	1. The boy is lazy or stupid.
2. I want a pen. I want a pencil.	2. I want a pen or a pencil.
3. The horse is lost. The horse is stolen.	3. The horse is lost or stolen.

19. Remember to put in the commas when more than two words or sets of words are joined by *or*, thus :—

We could have tea, coffee or cocoa.

The beggar asked for a piece of bread, a glass of milk or a few pence.

Exercise 22.

Combine the following sets of sentences by means of the Conjunction **or** :—

1. The child was tired. The child was sleepy.
2. My father will meet me at the station. My mother will meet me at the station.
3. Will you have tea? Will you have coffee?
4. The colonel must be present. One of the other officers must be present.
5. The cup was broken by the servant. The cup was broken by the dog. The cup was broken by the cat.
6. I must find the book. I must buy another.
7. The horse is in the stable. The horse is in the paddock. The horse is in the meadow.
8. The prize will be gained by Brown. The prize will be gained by Smith. The prize will be gained by Jones.

20. Sentences may be combined by *either . . . or*, and *neither . . . nor*, thus :—

Separate sentences.	*Combined sentences.*
James was at school this morning. His sister was at school this morning.	Either James or his sister was at school this morning, *or* Neither James nor his sister was at school this morning.

Exercise 23.

Combine the following sets of sentences :—

(a) *By* **either . . . or.** (b) *By* **neither . . . nor.**

1. The man can read. The man can write.
2. He is deaf. He is stupid.
3. That shot will strike the horse. That shot will strike the rider.
4. The king was weak in mind. The king was weak in body.
5. The king was loved. The queen was loved.
6. The cow is for sale. The calf is for sale.

21. Sentences may be combined by *both . . . and*, thus :—

Separate sentences.	*Combined sentences.*
The man is tired. The horse is tired.	Both the man and the horse are tired.

Exercise 24.

Combine, by means of **both . . . and**, *the sets of sentences given in Exercise* 23.

22. Sentences may be combined by means of Conjunctions of Cause, Consequence or Condition, such as *if*, *though*, *although*, *because*, thus :—

Separate sentences.	*Combined sentences.*
1. You are tired. You may rest.	1. If you are tired you may rest.
2. The boy was not clever. He was good.	2. Though the boy was not clever he was good.
3. He is liked. He is good tempered.	3. He is liked because he is good tempered.

Exercise 25.

Combine the following sets of sentences :—

(a) *By means of* **if.**

1. You will get the prize. You deserve it.
2. He might have succeeded. He had tried.
3. You are truthful. You will be believed.
4. Send for me. You want me.
5. You do not sow. You cannot expect to reap.
6. You are waking. Call me early.
7. I will come with you. You wish it.
8. We had known you were in town. We should have called on you.

(b) *By means of* **though** *or* **although.**

9. The man was contented. He was poor.
10. The little girl has travelled much. She is young.
11. The story is true. You do not believe it.
12. He spoke the truth. He was not believed.
13. It was rather cold. The day was pleasant.
14. He is often told of his faults. He does not mend them.
15. Hand joins[1] in hand. The wicked shall not go unpunished.

(c) *By means of* **because**; *also by means of* **as** *and* **since.**

16. I came. You called me.
17. I will stay. You wish it.
18. The dog could not enter. The hole was too small.
19. You are tired. You may rest.
20. Freely we serve. We freely love.
21. The hireling fleeth. He is a hireling.
22. We love him. He first loved us.

23. Sentences may be combined by means of Conjunctive Adverbs (such as *where* with its compounds, also *when, whence, why*), and of Conjunctions of Time (such as *after, before, while, ere, till, until, since*).

Exercise 26.

a. *Combine, by means of one of the words given in the last paragraph, the following sets of sentences :—*

1. This is the place. My brother works.
2. Mary went. The lamb was sure to go.

[1] Change *joins* into the Subjunctive Mood after *though*.

3. The boy was reading. His master came up.
4. The moon rose. The sun had set.
5. It is now three months. We heard from our cousin.
6. Do not go out. The storm has abated.
7. The man arrived. We were speaking of him.
8. I remember the house. I was born.
9. I know a bank. The wild thyme blows.
10. There is the field. The money was found.
11. The workman did not hear. He was called.
12. He goes out riding. He can find time.

b. *Supply the omitted clauses :—*

The tree is still lying where . . . . Wherever . . . . was my poor dog Tray. William came after . . . . My brother cannot stay till . . . . The merchant has been here since . . . . Go where . . . . Smooth runs the water where . . . . She stayed till . . . . The boy has worked hard since . . . . We shall be pleased to see you whenever . . . . The train had gone before . . . . The little girl was tired after . . . . Make hay while . . . . Green was the corn as [=while] . . . .

24. Sentences may be combined by means of Relative Pronouns, thus :—

Separate sentences.	*Combined sentences.*
1. That is the boy. The boy broke the window.	1. That is the boy who broke the window.
2. That is the man. The man's window was broken.	2. That is the man whose window was broken.
3. Mary is the girl. You want Mary.	3. Mary is the girl whom you want.
4. This is the house. Jack built the house.	4. This is the house that Jack built.
5. The knife was lost. The knife cost three shillings.	5. The knife which was lost cost three shillings.

Exercise 27.

Combine, as in the examples just given, the following pairs of sentences :—

1. The boy is crying. The boy is called Tom.
2. The man was hurt. The man is better now.
3. The grocer has sent for the police. The grocer's goods were stolen.
4. The child is very naughty. The father punished the child.

5. My uncle gave me the book. The book is on the table.
6. The horse goes well. I bought the horse.
7. The lady sings beautifully. You see the lady.
8. They did not hear the preacher. They went to hear the preacher.
9. The gentleman is very kind to the poor. You see the gentleman's house.
10. I have just bought an overcoat. The overcoat is waterproof.
11. The tree was a chestnut. The wind blew the tree down.
12. Tom had just been given the shilling. He lost it.
13. The boy drove away the birds. The birds were eating the corn.
14. The girl is very clever. You met her brother.
15. The dog fetched the birds. Its master had shot them.
16. Where is the book? You borrowed it.
17. The cow has been found. It was lost.

PUNCTUATION.[1]

25. If the proper stops are left out, the meaning of a sentence may be doubtful.

Thus the sentence

John Duke of Buckingham[2] has gone on a visit to his cousin George Bishop of Launceston

may mean

(1) John, Duke of Buckingham, has gone on a visit to his cousin George, Bishop of Launceston.

(2) John Duke, of Buckingham, has gone on a visit to his cousin George Bishop, of Launceston.

26. Similarly the sentence

Mr. Jones lived near his father's house being unhealthy he took a house on the hill

may mean

(1) Mr. Jones lived near. His father's house being unhealthy he took a house on the hill.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 2.

[2] A newspaper recently reported the bankruptcy of John, Duke of Buckingham, when the bankrupt really was John Duke, of Buckingham

(2) Mr. Jones lived near his father's house. Being unhealthy he took a house on the hill.

(3) Mr. Jones lived near his father's house, being unhealthy. He took a house on the hill.

27. The misplacing of the stops may make nonsense of a sentence.

Thus the sentence

Cæsar entered, on his head his helmet, on his feet sandals, in his hand his trusty sword, in his eye an angry glare

may become

Cæsar entered on his head, his helmet on his feet, sandals in his hand, his trusty sword in his eye, an angry glare.

The barber's sign also had two meanings according to its punctuation,—

(1) What do you think?
I shave you for nothing and give you a drink.

(2) What! Do you think
I shave you for nothing and give you a drink?

The Full Stop.

28. **A Full Stop** is placed at the end of every sentence.[1]

Exercise 28.

Insert full stops where wanted. Place a capital letter after each.

a. The old man was sitting under a tree the house was burned the roses were scattered by the wind the carpet was beaten this morning the mower was bitten by a snake that book is liked England was conquered by William the corn was ground by the miller the father was called by a little girl the cheeses were eaten by mice that fish is caught with a hook the flowers were gathered by Ellen that carving is much admired the lady was nearly stunned snow had newly fallen the sun had just risen the moon was almost setting Amelia is always reading Nelly had often driven the horse the week has quickly gone the bells were merrily ringing Willy pretended to be a bear Fred told his brother to keep the knife the people were going to hear a lecture Ethel can play the violin the messenger must return at once the

[1] See par. 11.

hunter wants to find a fox this lesson must be learned the children ought to mind their books the lad dared not meet his master the smith hears his daughter sing the mother let the girl go home Frank does not want any help the rain may leave off soon we might expect that the keeper makes the lions obey learn to obey listen to the band attend to your work try to do well hope for the best open the door shut the window wash your hands lend Thomas a pen make haste go to school at once help me to work this exercise.

b.[1] The celebrated Rabelais was once staying at an inn a long way from Paris he wanted to go to Paris he had not enough money to pay his travelling expenses he got some brickdust of this he made three little parcels on the first he wrote 'Poison for the king' on the second he wrote 'Poison for the king's son' on the third he wrote 'Poison for the king's brother' he left the parcels on the table the landlord saw them then he sent to the king's ministers they ordered a messenger to fetch Rabelais this was what he expected in Paris he was known he was proved to be no traitor his trick was discovered.

c. The celebrated Rabelais was once staying at a remote country inn he wished to go to Paris but had no money to pay his travelling expenses he therefore hit upon a plan of travelling at the expense of the government out of brickdust he made up three little parcels on the first he wrote 'For the king' on the second 'For the king's son' on the third 'For the king's brother' the landlord seeing these on the table where they had been purposely left sent word to the king's ministers they ordered a messenger to fetch the traitor when he reached Paris he was recognised he proved that he was no traitor and his trick was discovered.

Exercise 29

Correct the punctuation.

a. A farmer had several sons. Who used to quarrel with one another. He tried to cure them of this bad habit. By pointing out how foolish and wicked it was. But he found. That he did no good. By talking to them. So one day he laid a bundle of sticks before them. And he bade them break it. The eldest put out all his strength. But in vain. The other sons tried in turn. But they all failed. Then the father. Untying the bundle. Gave his sons the separate sticks to break. And they broke them easily. 'Remember,' he said, 'the lesson. Which this bundle teaches. While you help each other. None can harm you. When you quarrel. You are easily hurt.'

b. Some time before. He was made Pope. Gregory passing through the market at Rome. Saw for sale a number of beautiful children. With

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 3.

fair skins and long yellow hair. Their looks drew his attention. And their distress moved his pity. He asked. To what nation they belonged. And was told. That they were Angles. Then he knew. That they were heathens. And was grieved. To find that. Though so like to angels. In their loveliness and their innocence. They had not heard. Of the God in whom. He believed. He resolved that he would go to their land. To teach the people the religion of Christ. He asked the Pope for leave. And it was given. But the Romans loved Gregory. And begged him so earnestly. To abide with them. That he consented. But the desire to convert. The English was still strong within him. And when he became Pope himself. He sent Augustine and. Forty other monks. As missionaries to them.[1]

The Note of Interrogation.

29. Every direct[2] question is followed by a **Note of Interrogation**; as, 'How do you do?' 'When did you see your father?' 'I suppose, sir, you are a doctor?'

30. Sometimes a question forms part of a larger sentence, as,

They put their huge inarticulate question, 'What do you mean to do with us?' in a manner audible to every reflective soul in the kingdom.

Except in such cases, a note of interrogation is always followed by a capital letter.

31. *Carefully observe the full stops and notes of interrogation in the following:—*

A Paris fortune-teller was arrested and brought before a magistrate. He said to her 'You know how to read the future?' 'I do, sir.' 'Then you know what sentence I mean to pass on you?' 'Certainly.' 'Well, what will happen to you?' 'Nothing.' 'You are sure of it?' 'Yes.' 'Why?' 'Because if you had meant to punish me you would not be cruel enough to mock me.'

Exercise 30.

Insert full stops and notes of interrogation.

a. Is the gardener pruning the trees has the baker been here is the teacher liked were the pigs sold have the labourers been digging potatoes

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 4.

[2] The difference between *direct* and *indirect* will be explained in par. 44.

were those roses cut to-day had the gentleman lost his hat was the thief caught is the water boiling have the girls learned their poetry has the window been broken was the ship wrecked has the crew been saved is Harry sliding has aunt called will father wait is day breaking should scholars learn was the baby sleeping is the mother pleased was Susan knitting will Mr. Robinson sing has Frank started

b. A boy was going away without his mother's leave she called after him 'Where are you going, sir' 'To the village' 'What for' 'To buy a half-penny worth of nails' 'And what do you want a half-penny worth of nails for' 'For a half-penny'

The Comma.

32. The **Comma** is the most frequently used of all stops.

33. As a general rule, it may be stated that when, in reading, a slight pause is made, a comma should be inserted in writing; thus:—

All the chiefs who founded Teutonic dynasties in the continental provinces of the Roman empire, Alaric, Theodoric, Clovis, Alboin were excellent Christians. The followers of Ida and Cerdic, on the other hand, brought to their settlement in Britain all the superstitions of the Elbe. While the German princes who reigned at Paris, Toledo, Arles, and Ravenna listened with reverence to the instructions of bishops, adored the relics of martyrs, and took part eagerly in disputes touching the Nicene theology, the rulers of Wessex and Mercia were still performing savage rites in the temples of Thor and Woden.—*Macaulay.*

Even Milton, looking for his portrait in a spoon, must submit to have the facial angle of a bumpkin.—*George Eliot.*

By desiring what is perfectly good, even when we don't quite know what it is, and cannot do what we would, we are part of the divine power against evil.—*Id.*

Almost all the flowers, the herbs, and the fruits that grow in European gardens are of foreign extraction, which, in many cases, is betrayed even by their names: the apple was a native of Italy, and when the Romans had tasted the richer flavour of the apricot, the peach, the pomegranate, the citron, and the orange, they contented themselves with applying to all these new fruits the common denomination of apple, discriminating them from each other by the additional epithet of their country.—*Gibbon.*

34. When a Noun or Pronoun in Apposition is very closely connected with the preceding word, no comma is needed, as,

William the Conqueror.
My cousin Fred.
Cromwell the Protector.

35. When the connection is not so close, or when the words in apposition are qualified, the phrase should have commas before and after, as,

William, the Norman conqueror of England, lived a stormy life.
My cousin, the bold and gallant Fred, fell in battle.
Cromwell, the great Protector, died in 1658.

Exercise 31.

Insert the necessary commas.

Napoleon the fallen emperor was sent to St. Helena. I live in London the capital of England. The children love their uncle Mr. Holmes. That coat was made by Brown the village tailor. It was the lark the herald of the morn. Tom the piper's son stole a pig. Frank the jockey's leg is broken. Rome the city of the emperors became the city of the popes. He still feels ambition the last infirmity of noble minds. Julius Cæsar a great Roman general invaded Britain.

36. A Nominative of Address is marked off by commas, as,

Are you, sir, waiting for anyone?

37. Should the Nominative of Address have any qualifying words joined to it, the whole phrase is marked off by commas, as,

How now, my man of mettle, what is 't you want?

Exercise 32.

Insert the necessary commas.

O Romeo wherefore art thou Romeo? In truth fair Montague I am too fond. O grave where is thy victory? I pray you sire to let me have the honour. Exult ye proud patricians. Put on thy strength O Zion. My name dear saint is hateful to myself. I am sorry friend that my vessel is already chosen. O night and darkness ye are wondrous strong. Good morrow sweet Hal. Now my good sweet honey lord ride with us to-morrow. Come my masters let us share. For mine own part my lord I could be well contented to be there.

38. An Adverbial phrase or clause let into a sentence should be marked off by commas, as,

His story was, in several ways, improbable.
The letter was written, strange to say, on club paper.

A time there was, ere England's griefs began,
When every rood of ground maintained its man.

They set, as sets the morning star, which goes
Not down behind the darkened west.

Exercise 33.

Supply commas where necessary.

You will hear in the course of the meeting a full account of the business. The story is however true. The wounded man is according to the latest news doing well. He arrived in spite of difficulties at his journey's end. He explains with perfect simplicity vast designs affecting all the governments of Europe. In France indeed such things are done. I will when I see you tell you a secret. I had till you told me heard nothing of the matter. There where a few torn shrubs the place disclose the village preacher's modest mansion rose. You may if you call again see him. You cannot unless you try harder hope to succeed. The little girl after she had walked three miles was tired. I was extremely pleased as we rode along to observe the general benevolence. They had done so for some time when as I was at a little distance from the rest of the company I saw a hare pop out. The hare after having squatted two or three times and been put up again as often came still nearer to the place where she was at first started.

39. Words, phrases, or clauses of the same kind coming after one another, must be separated by commas, except when joined by Conjunctions, as,

Let Rufus weep, rejoice, stand still or walk . . .
Let him eat, drink, ask questions or dispute.

Her lower weeds were all o'er coarsely patched
With diff'rent coloured rags, black, red, white, yellow.—*Otway.*

You may easily imagine to yourself what appearance I made, who am pretty tall, rid well and was very well dressed, at the head of a whole county, with music before me, a feather in my hat and my horse well bitted.—*Addison.*

Exercise 34.

Supply commas where necessary.

I met Fred Will and George. Faith hope and charity are the Christian graces. The grocer sold four pounds of cheese two pounds of bacon and seven pounds of sugar. Little drops of water little grains of sand make the mighty ocean and the pleasant land. We could have tea coffee cocoa lemonade or ginger beer. The beggar asked for a piece of bread a glass of milk or a few pence. The prize will be won by Smith Brown or Jones. The first second third and fourth boys in the class will be promoted. Before this disappointment Sir Roger was what you call a fine gentleman had often supped with my lord Rochester and Sir George Etherege fought a duel upon his first coming to town and kicked Bully Dawson in a public coffee-house. He is now in his fifty-sixth year cheerful gay and hearty. His tenants grow rich his servants look satisfied all the young women profess to love him and the young men are glad of his company. He is a man of probity wit and understanding. Swift Addison Defoe Steele and Prior joined in the political strife.

'Twas then great Marlborough's mighty soul was proved
That in the shock of charging hosts unmoved
Amidst confusion horror and despair
Examined all the dreadful scenes of war,
In peaceful thought the field of death surveyed
To fainting squadrons sent the timely aid
Inspired repulsed battalions to engage
And taught the doubtful battle where to rage.

40. A participial phrase is generally marked off by commas; as,

The general, seeing his soldiers turn, galloped up to them.
The baby lying asleep, the children were very quiet.

Exercise 35.

Insert commas where necessary.

James leaving the country William was made king. The storm having abated the ships ventured to sail. Henry returning victorious the people went forth to meet him. My friend Sir Roger being a good churchman has beautified the inside of his church. The woman being in great trouble was weeping. Fearing the storm we returned. The sun with ruddy orb ascending fills the horizon. His rising cares the hermit spied with

answering cares oppressed. Hence in silence and in sorrow toiling still with busy hand like an emigrant he wandered seeking for the better land. I had not been out of the saddle for six days having been at Eton with Sir John's eldest son. Being bred to no business he generally lives with his eldest brother.

Exercise 36.

Read again Pars. 32–40, *and insert commas where necessary in the following sentences :—*

In those distant days as in all other times and places where the mental atmosphere is changing and men are inhaling the stimulus of new ideas folly often mistook itself for wisdom ignorance gave itself airs of knowledge and selfishness turning its eyes upward called itself religion.—*George Eliot.*

The captain who did not fail to meet me there at the appointed hour bid Sir Roger fear nothing for that he had put on the same sword which he made use of at the battle of Steenkirk. Sir Roger's servants and among the rest my old friend the butler had I found provided themselves with good oaken plants to attend their master upon this occasion. When we had placed him in his coach with myself at his left hand the captain before him and the butler at the head of his footmen in the rear we convoyed him in safety to the playhouse where after having marched up to the entry in good order the captain and I went in with him and seated him betwixt us in the pit. As soon as the house was full and the candles lighted my old friend stood up and looked about him. . . . I could not but fancy to myself as the old man stood up in the middle of the pit that he made a very proper centre to a tragic audience.—*Addison.*

When I was running about this town a very poor fellow I was a great arguer for the advantages of poverty but I was at the same time very sorry to be poor.—*Johnson.*

Goldsmith however was often very fortunate in his witty contests even when he entered the lists with Johnson himself. Sir Joshua Reynolds was in company with them one day when Goldsmith said that he thought he could write a good fable mentioned the simplicity which that kind of composition requires and observed that in most fables the animals introduced seldom talk in character; for instance' said he 'the fable of the little fishes who saw birds fly over their heads and envying them petitioned Jupiter to be changed into birds. The skill' continued he 'consists in making them talk like little fishes.' While he indulged himself in this fanciful reverie he observed Johnson shaking his sides and laughing. 'Why Dr. Johnson this is not so easy as you seem to think for if you were to make little fishes talk they would talk like whales.' *Boswell.*

The Semi-colon.

41. It may be generally stated that a **Semi-colon** is used in a complex sentence when a comma would not be a sufficient division.

42. Co-ordinate clauses or sentences, especially if not joined by Conjunctions, are generally separated by semi-colons.

Examples of the use of semi-colons.

The first in loftiness of mind surpassed;
The next in majesty; in both the last.—*Dryden.*

Many a man lives a burden to the earth; but a good book is the precious life-blood of a master-spirit, embalmed and treasured up on purpose to a life beyond life.—*Milton.*

All nature is but art unknown to thee;
All chance, direction, which thou canst not see;
All discord, harmony, not understood;
All partial evil universal good.—*Pope.*

Exercise 37.

Supply semi-colons where necessary.

Milton, it is said, inherited what his predecessors created he lived in an enlightened age he received a finished education and we must therefore, if we would form a just estimate of his powers, make large deductions in consideration of these advantages.

He may believe in a moral sense like Shaftesbury he may refer all human actions to self-interest like Helvetius or he may never think about the matter at all.

He gives us the shape, the sound, the colour, the smell, the taste he counts the numbers he measures the size.

Of the great men by whom Milton had been distinguished at his entrance into life some had been taken away from the evil to come some had carried into foreign climates their unconquerable hatred of oppression some were pining in dungeons and some had poured forth their blood on scaffolds.

Then palaces shall rise the joyful son
Shall finish what his short-lived sire begun
Their vines a shadow to their race shall yield
And the same hand that sowed shall reap the field. - *Pope.*

Hope humbly then with trembling pinions soar
Wait the great teacher, Death, and God adore.—*Pope.*

Go, wondrous creature, mount where science guides
Go measure earth, weigh air, and state the tides
Instruct the planets in what orbs to run
Correct old Time and regulate the sun.—*Id.*

The Note of Admiration or Exclamation.

43. The **Note of Admiration** or **Exclamation** is used

(1) After Interjections; as,

Alas! he is already dead.

(2) After a phrase in the nature of an address or exclamation; as,

Vital spark of heavenly flame!
Quit, oh quit this mortal frame;
Trembling, hoping, ling'ring, flying,
Oh the pain, the bliss of dying!—*Pope.*

(3) As a mark of surprise; as,

Two and two are five!

Prepare the way, a god, a god appears!
'A god! a god!' the vocal hills reply.

Exercise 38.

Insert notes of exclamation where necessary.

Alas he is already dead. Alas poor Yorick. Tush never tell me that. Well-a-day it is but too true. Tut, tut that is all nonsense. Hey come here. O for a falconer's voice. Hurrah our side has won. Bravo that was well done. Hush the baby is asleep. Fie A soldier and afraid Ah the cowards. Oh what beautiful flowers Heigh-ho I am tired of waiting.

Hush hush mee-ow mee-ow
We smell a rat close by.

Hurrah, hurrah a single field hath turned the chance of war
Hurrah, hurrah for Ivry and Henry of Navarre

Ho maidens of Vienna ho matrons of Lucerne,
Weep, weep for those who never will return.

Inverted Commas.

44. A **Quotation** is said to be **direct** when the exact words are given; it is said to be **indirect** when the substance is given, but not the exact words; thus:—

Direct quotations.	*Indirect quotations.*
1. Mr. Brown said 'I am going for a walk.'	1. Mr. Brown said he was going for a walk.
2. Mrs. Evans writes, 'I hope to see you soon.'	2. Mrs. Evans writes that she hopes to see us soon.
3. He asked me 'What is your name?'	3. He asked me what my name was.

Exercise 39.

Turn the direct quotations into indirect.

Johnson said 'I am a very fair judge.' 'I doubt the story' observed Mrs. Beckett. 'That was not quite what I had in my mind' answered the widow. 'I am very tired' added Mr. Brown. 'That is false' we all shouted. 'You must be a born fool' shouted the old man to me. 'You must be a born fool' shouted the old man to her. 'You must be born fools' shouted the old man to us. 'Our host is an inferior person' he remarked. 'Are you better?' enquired she. Someone asked 'Do you mean to stay till to-morrow.' 'Little kitten' I say, 'just an hour you may stay.' 'I'll have that mouse' said the bigger cat. Bun replied 'You are doubtless very big.'

45. A direct quotation always begins with a capital letter, and is placed within inverted commas, thus:—

But his little daughter whispered,
As she shook his icy hand,
'Isn't God upon the ocean,
Just the same as on the land?'

46. The titles of books are generally placed within inverted commas, thus:—

Defoe wrote 'Robinson Crusoe.'

Thackeray is the author of 'Vanity Fair,' 'Pendennis,' 'Esmond,' 'The Newcomes,' and other novels.

47. Some printers place quotations within double commas; thus,

The man said "Where are you going?"

Exercise 40.

Place all direct quotations within inverted commas.

Oh Charley, this is too absurd ejaculated Mrs. Beckett. Why, Mr. Paton must be going mad exclaimed Mrs. Beckett. Oh dear! dear! I can indeed gasped the widow. The butler announced Major and Mrs. Wellington de Boots. You will give my love to your mother when you write said Mary warmly. He smiled as though he were thinking I have it not to give. The elder replied I was, as usual, unfortunate. How naughty he is said his mother. Do you understand the language of flowers? enquired Uncle Ralph. Why, that is lightning exclaimed the knight. Juan replied Not while this arm is free. He thought The boy will be here soon. Tom broke in with You do not know whom I mean. He will soon be back continued Mr. Brooke. Remember the proverb Small strokes fell great oaks. Provoking scoundrel muttered the antiquary. Out with those boats and let us haste away cried one. Hearts of oak! our captains cried.

Shoot, if you must, this old grey head,
But spare your country's flag she said.

Who touches a hair of yon grey head
Dies like a dog. March on he said.

He woke to hear his sentries shriek
To arms! They come! The Greek! The Greek!

Out spake the victor then,
As he hailed them o'er the wave,
Ye are brothers! ye are men!
And we conquer but to save.

48. Sometimes, in the course of a quotation, words are inserted which form no part of the quotation; thus,

'Out with those boats and let us haste away'
Cried one 'ere yet yon sea the bark devours.'

In such cases every separate part of the quotation is marked off by inverted commas. A capital letter is placed only at the beginning of the quotation, or after a full stop.

Exercise 41.

Place all direct quotations within inverted commas.

I cannot tell you that replied the young man; it would not be fair to others. It was not answered the other; your house has always seemed like home. But, surely, argued the widow it must be a comfort to feel that. In the meantime said Edgar I will write to you. A common rose, said Uncle Ralph, like common sense and common honesty, is not so very common. Poor faithful old doggie! murmured Mrs. Currie, he thought Tacks was a burglar. Capital house dog! murmured the colonel; I shall never forget how he made poor Heavisides run. Cloudy, sir, said the colonel, cloudy; rain before morning, I think. I don't see the dog I began; I suppose you found him all right, the other evening. Oh, uncle, pleaded Lilian; don't talk like that.

Little kitten, I say,
Just an hour you may stay.

Agreed, said Ching, but let us try it soon:
Suppose we say to-morrow afternoon.
They're there, said Chang, if I see anything
As clear as daylight.

May Heaven look down, the old man cries
Upon my son and on his ship.

Nay, Solomon replied,
The wise and strong should seek
The welfare of the weak.

O king! she said; henceforth
The secret of thy worth
And wisdom well I know.

49. A quotation which occurs within a quotation is marked by double inverted commas; thus,

Miriam sang 'The enemy said "I will pursue, I will overtake, I will divide the spoil."'

50. When double inverted commas are used for an ordinary quotation, a quotation within a quotation is marked by single inverted commas; thus,

Miriam sang "The enemy said 'I will pursue, I will overtake, I will divide the spoil.'"

Exercise 42.

Place all direct quotations within inverted commas.

Say What do you want, Master Reed? was the answer. Mr. Brocklehurst said When I ask him which he would rather have, a gingerbread nut to eat or a verse of a Psalm to learn he says Oh the verse of a Psalm: angels sing Psalms. He continued, On her return she exclaimed Oh, dear Papa, how quiet and plain all the girls at Lowood look. I shall remember I said how you thrust me back though I cried out Have mercy! Have mercy, Aunt Reed. The father said Remember the proverb Keep not evil men company lest you increase the number. But said the lecturer you must note the words of Shakespeare

Spirits are not finely touched
But to fine issues.

The teacher asked In what play do the words All the world's a stage occur? My sister writes in her last letter Will you please get me a copy of the song Tell me, my heart. In a poem on Dr. South preaching before Charles II. we read

The doctor stopped, began to call,
Pray wake the Earl of Lauderdale

Exercise 43.

[On all stops.]

Insert the necessary stops and capital letters.

a. Mr. Rich had much money and little politeness he thought it beneath him to be civil to those whom he called the common people one wet day he was driving in his gig along a turnpike road when he came to the toll gate he called out what's to pay eightpence if you please sir said the keeper Mr. Rich instead of handing the money rudely flung a shilling on the muddy ground and cried there take your change out of that the keeper stooped for the silver and picked it up then placing four pennies exactly on the same spot he coolly walked back into his cottage.

b. The statement is beyond doubt true. They set out and in a few hours arrived at their father's. We live in an old beautiful and interesting town. Sir I believe you. He is guilty of the vice of cowards falsehood. The horse tired with the long gallop could go no further. Yes I am coming. Nay you are wrong. Philosophers assert that nature is unlimited in her operations that she has inexhaustible treasures in reserve that knowledge will always be progressive and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries of which we have not the least idea. The pride of wealth is contemptible the pride of learning is pitiable the pride of dignity is ridiculous but the pride of bigotry is insupportable. How honourable the pursuits of the good man. Nevertheless strange stories got about. In a few days his lordship's town house was observed to be on fire. Give me Master Zimmermann a sympathetic solitude. The chief must be colonel his uncle or his brother must be major the tacksmen must be the captains. On his tomb was the inscription Here lies an honest man. The man having slipped fell over the cliff. The general having rallied his soldiers led them forward. The soldier afraid to meet his punishment deserted. Nelson's last signal was England expects every man to do his duty. He was a wealthy prudent active and kind man. When you have finished your work you may go home. Hope the balm of life soothes us under every misfortune. Truth freedom and virtue are the noblest possessions. Thou art he but ah how fallen. The Lord said unto Satan Whence comest thou.

Is this the grey-haired wanderer mildly said
The voice which we so lately overheard

Hark 'tis the twanging horn. O what a fall was there my countrymen Oh why has worth so short a date These ordinances therefore were never carried into full execution. Such inquiry according to him was out of their province. The conflict was terrible it was the combat of despair against grief and rage. Old and young rich and poor wise and foolish were involved in the ruin. Confess them with an humble lowly penitent and obedient heart. Who can tell the number of the stars? Try not the pass the old man said. Oh stay the maiden said and rest. Nathan said unto David Thou art the man. England with all thy faults I love thee still. Human happiness has always its abatements. The brightest sunshine of success is not without a cloud. I forget whether advice be among the lost things which Ariosto says may be found in the moon that and time ought to have been there. It arises in part at least from the same cause. Change says Hooker is not without inconvenience even from good to better. This also had been inspected by Todd. Charge Chester charge on Stanley on Oh that I had wings like a dove Can you come with me to-morrow Any news from home

EASY NARRATIVES.[1]

51. When writing a story which you have read or heard, observe the following directions:—

(1) Before beginning to write, think over the whole story, to make sure that you remember all the points, and the order in which they come.

Neglect of this direction may cause you to omit something or to put something in the wrong place.

(2) Before beginning to write each sentence, arrange the whole of it in your mind.

If you neglect this direction you may find that the second part of a sentence goes badly with the first, or that you cannot finish at all a sentence such as you have begun. Here is an example:—

I am desired to inform the Court of Aldermen that Mr. Alderman Gill died last night *by order of Mrs. Gill.*

The words printed in italics could not have been in the mind of the writer when he began, or he would have placed them after *desired*, or (better still) he would have said 'I am desired by Mrs. Gill.'

(3) Make short sentences.

Beware of using *and* and *so* too often. Avoid such a sentence as the following:—

Once upon a time there was a fox and he went into a vineyard and there he saw many bunches of beautiful ripe grapes hanging on high and he tried to reach them and he could not jump high enough and so he turned to go and said 'It does not matter; the grapes are sour.'

Such a sentence ought to be divided into several; thus:—

A fox once went into a vineyard. There he saw many bunches of beautiful ripe grapes hanging on high. He tried to reach them, but found that he could not jump high enough. As he turned to go he said, 'It does not matter; the grapes are sour.'

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 5.

The following sentence has several faults besides its length:—

He [Swinton] did with a sort of eloquence that moved the whole House lay out all his own errors and the ill spirit he was in when he committed the things that were charged on him with so tender a sense that he seemed as one indifferent what they should do with him, and without so much as moving for mercy or even for a delay he did so effectually prevail on them that they recommended him to the king as a fit object of his mercy.—BURNET: *History of his Own Time.*

It is amended somewhat by division into shorter sentences, thus:—

With a sort of eloquence that moved the whole House he did lay out all his own errors and the ill spirit that he was in when he committed the things that were charged on him. He spoke with so tender a sense that he seemed as one indifferent what they should do with him. Without so much as moving for mercy or even for a delay he did so effectually prevail on them that they recommended him to the king as a fit object for mercy.

(4) Use no word of which you do not know the exact meaning.

Neglect of this rule led someone to write:—

The music was completely drowned by a tremendous ovation[1] which rent the air.

(5) Do not use long words if you can find short ones.

The barber who advertised himself as 'a first-class tonsorial artist and facial operator,' meant only that he could cut hair and shave well.

(6) Arrange the different parts of each sentence so that they convey the meaning which you intend.

The following sentence is badly arranged:—

He tells stories which Mountain would be shocked to hear after dinner.—THACKERAY: *The Virginians.*

Mountain would be shocked to hear them at any time. To convey the author's meaning the sentence should be:—

After dinner he tells stories which Mountain would be shocked to hear.

(7) When you have written your story, always read it over, and correct all the mistakes which you can find.

[1] A Roman general coming home victorious was granted the honour of a 'triumph' or the lower honour of an 'ovation,' in which a sheep (Latin, *ovis*) was sacrificed. How an ovation could be tremendous, how it could rend the air, or how it could drown music is impossible to say.

Short Stories

to be read carefully, and then written from memory.

The Fox and the Goat.

A fox that had fallen into a well tried in vain to get out again. By-and-by a goat came to the place to quench her thirst. Seeing the fox below she asked if the water was good. 'Yes,' answered the cunning creature, 'it is so good that I cannot leave off drinking.' Thereupon the goat, without a moment's thought, jumped in. The fox at once scrambled on her back and got out. Then, looking down at the poor fool, he said coolly, 'If you had half as much brains as beard, you would look before you leap.'

The Vain Jackdaw.

A vain jackdaw found some peacocks' feathers and stuck them amongst his own. Then he left his old companions and boldly went amongst the peacocks. They knew him at once, in spite of his disguise; so they stripped off his borrowed plumes, pecked him well, and sent him about his business. He went back to the daws as if nothing had happened, but they would not allow him to mix with them. If he was too good for them before, they were too good for him now. Thus the silly bird, by trying to appear better than he was, lost his old friends without making any new ones.

The Ant and the Grasshopper.

One frosty day a grasshopper, half dead with cold and hunger, knocked at the door of an ant, and begged for something to eat. 'What were you doing in the summer?' asked the ant. 'Oh, I was singing all the time.' 'Then,' said the ant, 'if you could sing all the summer you may dance all the winter.'

The Wolf and the Lamb.

A wolf, coming to a brook to drink, saw a lamb standing in the stream, some distance down. He made up his mind to kill her, and at once set about finding an excuse. 'Villain,' he said, 'how dare you dirty the water which I am drinking?' The lamb answered meekly, 'Sir, it is impossible for me to dirty the water which you are drinking, because the stream runs from you to me, not from me to you.' 'Be that as it may,' replied the wolf, 'you called me bad names a year ago.' 'Sir,' pleaded the lamb, 'you are mistaken; a year ago I was not born.' 'Then,' said the hungry beast, 'if it was not you it was your father, and that is as bad. It is of no use trying to argue me out of my supper.' Thereupon he fell upon the poor creature and ate her up.

The False Alarm.

A shepherd boy was tending his flock near a village. Several times he cried 'Wolf!' without cause, and when the villagers ran to help him he only laughed at them for their pains. At last a wolf really did come, and the boy called out in earnest. The neighbours heard him, but, thinking he was at his old tricks, they took no notice, and many sheep were killed. Liars are not believed even when they speak the truth.

What the Bear said.

As two friends were travelling through a wood, a bear rushed out upon them. One of the men, without a thought to his companion, climbed up into a tree, and hid among the branches. The other, knowing that alone he had no chance, threw himself on the ground, and pretended to be dead; for he had heard that bears will not touch a dead body. The creature came and sniffed him from head to foot, but, thinking him to be lifeless, went away without harming him. Then the man in the tree got down, and, hoping to pass his cowardice off with a joke, he said, 'I noticed that the bear had his mouth very close to your ear; what did he whisper to you?' 'Oh,' answered the other, 'he only told me never to keep company with those who in time of danger leave their friends in the lurch.'

Bad Company.

A farmer who had just sown his fields placed a net to catch the cranes that came to steal his corn. After some time he went to look at the net, and in it he found several cranes and one stork. 'Oh, sir, please spare me,' said the stork; 'I am not a crane, I am an innocent stork, kind to my parents, and ——' The farmer would hear no more. 'All that may be very true,' he said, 'but it is no business of mine. I found you amongst thieves, and you must suffer with them.'

Mercury and the Woodmen.

A woodman was working beside a deep river when his axe slipped, and fell into the water. As the axe was his living, he was very sorry to lose it, and sat on the bank to weep. Mercury, hearing his cries, appeared to him, and, finding what was the matter, dived, and brought up a golden axe. 'Is this the one which you lost?' asked the god. 'No,' said the woodman. Then the god dived a second time, and brought up a silver axe, and asked if that was the one. The woodman again answered 'No.' So Mercury dived a third time, and then he brought up the axe which had been lost. 'That is mine,' cried the woodman joyfully. The god gave it to him, and presented him with the other two as a reward for his truth and honesty.

One of the woodman's neighbours, hearing what had happened, determined to see if he could not have the same good luck. He went to the bank of the river, began to fell a tree, purposely let his axe slip into the water, and then pretended to cry. Mercury appeared as before, dived, and brought up a golden axe. The man, in his eagerness to grasp the prize, forgot to act as his neighbour had done; so when the god asked 'Is that yours?' he answered 'Yes.' To punish him for his lying and dishonesty, the god would neither give him the golden axe nor find his own.

The Milkmaid.

A country maid was walking to the town to sell some milk, which she carried in a pitcher on her head. As she went along she said to herself, 'I have already fifty eggs at home; with the money which I get for my milk I will buy fifty more. These hundred eggs cannot fail to bring me at least eighty chickens. The chickens will be ready for market just when poultry is dearest, so that they will sell for a good sum. With the money I will get me a new gown, and when I wear it at the fair the young fellows will want to dance with me, but I will turn from each with a toss of the head.' As she said these words she could not help giving her head a toss, when down fell pitcher, milk, eggs, poultry, gown, sweethearts, and all. Count not your chickens before they are hatched.

Bell the Cat.

The mice held a meeting to consider what they should do to save themselves from the cat. Several plans were talked over but not one seemed worth much. At last a young mouse proposed that a little bell should be hung round the cat's neck, so that whenever she was coming they would hear her, and could run into their holes. This proposition was much applauded, till an old mouse, that had not hitherto spoken, asked quietly who was going to bell the cat.

Dr. Johnson and Mrs. Siddons.

Dr. Johnson always spoke scornfully of actors and actresses, but he treated the famous actress, Mrs. Siddons, with great politeness. She called on him, and his servant could not readily find a chair for her. 'You see, madam,' said the doctor 'wherever you go no seats can be got.'

Clever Children.

An ignorant Englishman once visited Paris. After his return he was talking to some of his friends about the wonders which he had seen. 'I was most surprised,' he said, 'with the cleverness of the children. Boys and girls of seven or eight spoke French quite as easily as the children in this country speak English.'

Croker's Conceit.

Croker had a very good opinion of himself. Once, when he was in the company of the Duke of Wellington, the talk turned upon the battle of Waterloo, and Croker actually contradicted several of the statements made by the Duke. Afterwards the Duke spoke about the copper caps which were used for firing muskets, and again Croker put him right. This upset the patience of the great soldier, and he exclaimed, 'I may know little about the battle of Waterloo, but I certainly do know something about copper caps.'

One Good Turn deserves Another.

A Cambridge student sent to another student to borrow a book. 'I never lend my books out,' was the answer, 'but if the gentleman chooses to come to my rooms he may use them there.' A few days after the book-owner sent to the other student to borrow a pair of bellows. 'I never lend my bellows out,' replied he, 'but if the gentleman chooses to come to my rooms he may use them there.'

Wanting a Capacity.

A rich but uneducated woman, who had sent her daughter to a good school, called one day to ask how she was getting on. 'Pretty well, madam,' answered the governess; 'Miss is very attentive. If she wants anything it is a capacity for study, but for that deficiency we must not blame her.' 'No,' replied the mother; 'but I blame you for not mentioning it before. Her father, thank goodness! can afford her a capacity, and I beg that she may have one at once, be the price what it may.'

Learning Rewarded.

A rich farmer sent his son to a famous university. The young man was rather foolish, and brought home more folly than learning. One night, when there were two fowls for supper, he said, 'I can prove these two fowls to be three.' 'Let us hear,' answered the old man. 'This,' said the scholar, pointing to the first, 'is one; this,' pointing to the second, 'is two; and two and one make three.' 'Since you have made it out so well,' replied the father, 'your mother shall have the first fowl, I will have the second, and you may keep the third for your great learning.'

Daring a Dutchman.

A Dutch vessel and an English vessel were lying near each other. One of the Dutch sailors wished to show his activity, so he ran up the mast, and stood upon his head on the top of it. One of the English sailors (who did not like to be beaten by a Dutchman) also tried to stand upon his head on

the top of the mast. He, however, fell. The rigging broke his fall and he alighted on the deck unhurt. 'There, you lubber,' he cried, 'do that if you dare.'

The Miserly Planter.

A very miserly planter formerly lived in the island of Jamaica. He often gave his poor slaves too little food. They complained, and he answered that he could not help himself, because the provision ships had been taken by pirates. This lying excuse satisfied them once, twice, thrice, and again, but in the end long fasting made them impatient. Then they went to their master and said to him, 'Is it not strange that the pirates have so often taken the ships bringing food, but have never taken the ships bringing pickaxes and hoes?'

The Corsican Brigand.

A Corsican brigand chief was captured and imprisoned, but he managed to escape. The soldier who had been put to guard him was tried and condemned to die. When the poor fellow was led out to execution, a stranger stepped up to the commanding officer and said, 'Sir, I have heard that one of your men is to be shot for allowing a prisoner to escape. He is blameless, and the prisoner shall be restored to you. I am the brigand chief, and as I cannot allow an innocent man to be punished for me, I have come to take his place.' The officer said, 'The soldier shall be set free, but thou shalt not die; thou deservest to live an honest man.'

The King and the Bishops.

James the First once asked his council if he could not take the money of his subjects without the consent of Parliament. Bishop Neile answered flatteringly:—'Your Majesty may lawfully take the money of your subjects because you are the breath of our nostrils.' It was then the turn of Bishop Andrews to speak. He knew that the truth would displease the king, so he tried to avoid a reply by saying that he was not skilful in such matters. As, however, James insisted on a plain answer, he said, 'I am sure that your Majesty may lawfully take brother Neile's money, because he says you may.'

A Precious Turnip.

Before Louis the Eleventh became king he used to visit a peasant whose garden produced excellent fruit. After his accession, the peasant brought him as a present a very large turnip which had grown in his garden. The king, remembering the pleasant hours that he had spent under the old man's roof, gave him a thousand crowns. The lord of the village, hearing of this, thought that if one who gave a paltry turnip received so large a reward, one who gave a really valuable present would receive a still larger reward. He, therefore, offered a splendid horse. The king accepted it and, calling for the big turnip, said, 'This cost me a thousand crowns; I give it to you in return for your horse.'

Simple Simon.

The *Arethusa*, an English warship, being about to go into action, two of the sailors, Jack and Simon, agreed to take care of each other. Soon a ball shot off Jack's leg, and he called upon Simon to carry him to the doctor, according to their agreement. Simon had scarcely got his wounded companion on his back, before a second ball shot off the poor fellow's head. Through the noise and bustle of the battle, Simon did not notice this new misfortune, and kept on his way. Lieutenant Hope, seeing him with the headless trunk, asked where he was going. 'To the doctor,' answered Simon. 'You stupid fellow!' said the officer; 'what is the use of taking to the doctor a man who has lost his head?' 'Lost his head!' exclaimed Simon, throwing down the body; 'why, so he has! He told me that it was his leg that he had lost, but I was a fool to believe him, for he always was a liar.'

A Gallant Captain.

In the reign of Queen Anne Captain Hardy was stationed in Lagos Bay. He heard that some Spanish galleons had lately arrived in the harbour of Vigo, and that they were protected by seventeen men-of-war. Sir George Rooke was then commanding in the Mediterranean, and Captain Hardy immediately set sail to tell him. The admiral steered for Vigo, and took or destroyed the whole fleet. After the battle, Sir George sent for Captain Hardy and said to him, 'You have done a very great service to your queen and country, but I could shoot you here and now, because you quitted Lagos though you were ordered to stay there.' The captain replied, 'I should be unworthy to serve in the navy if I were unwilling to risk my life for the honour and glory of England.' This answer pleased the admiral so much that he sent news of the victory to the queen by Hardy, and commended him to her favour. She knighted the gallant sailor, and afterwards made him a rear-admiral.

Paying the Porter.

A rich nobleman who lived in a beautiful castle near Pisa was going to give a great feast. The weather had been so stormy that no fish could be caught. On the morning of the banquet, however, a poor fisherman appeared with a splendid turbot. The nobleman was very glad, and asked him to fix his own price for it. The fisherman answered, 'The price is a hundred lashes on my bare back.' The nobleman said, 'I would prefer giving you money, but as we must have the fish we will humour your fancy.' When the fisherman had received fifty strokes he called out, 'Stop! I have a partner, and he must have his fair share.' 'What!' exclaimed the

astonished nobleman, 'are there two such fools in the world? Send for the other madcap.' 'The other madcap,' said the fisherman, 'is your own porter. He would not let me in till I had promised to give him one-half of the price I got for the turbot.' When the greedy porter had received fifty lashes he was dismissed, and the clever fisherman was well rewarded.

The Dangers of a Bed.

A carpenter asked a sailor, 'Where did your father die?' The sailor answered, 'My father, my grandfather, and my great-grandfather were all drowned at sea.' 'Then,' said the carpenter, 'are you not afraid of going to sea, lest you should be drowned too?' Instead of replying, the sailor asked, 'Where did your father die?' 'In his bed.' 'And your grandfather?' 'In his bed.' 'And your great-grandfather?' 'In his bed also.' 'Then,' said the sailor, 'why should I be more afraid of going to sea than you are of going to bed?'

How to treat Enemies.

A Scotch minister had in his parish a man who sometimes used to get drunk. One day the minister, reproving him for his bad habit, said, 'You love whisky too much, Donald; you know very well that it is your worst enemy.' 'But,' answered the man slily, 'have you not often told us that we ought to love our enemies?' 'True, Donald, but I never told you that you ought to swallow them.'

The Broken Plates.

A boy who was employed in a great house was warned that he should be dismissed if he broke any of the china. Just before a dinner-party he was carrying a high pile of plates from the kitchen to the dining-room. As he was going upstairs his foot slipped and the plates were broken to pieces. He at once went up to the drawing-room, where his mistress was, put his head in at the door, and shouted, 'The plates are all smashed, and I'm off.'

The Secret of Success.

During the long struggle between England and France, two ignorant old ladies were discussing the war as they went to church. One said, 'Is it not wonderful that the English always beat the French?' 'Not at all,' answered the other; 'don't you know that the English always say their prayers before going into battle?' 'But,' replied the first, 'can't the French say their prayers as well?' 'Tut, tut,' said the second; 'poor jabbering bodies, who can understand them?'

Water and Manners.

An Edinburgh barrister who spoke with a broad Scotch accent was arguing a case before the English House of Lords. In the course of his

address he had several times to use the word *water*, which he pronounced *wat-ter*. The chancellor at last said to him, 'Do you in Scotland spell *water* with two *t*'s?' 'No, my lord,' was the answer; 'we do not spell *water* with two *t*'s, but we do spell *manners* with two *n*'s.'

The Preacher for Prisoners.

When David Dewar was a member of the Prison Board the question of appointing a chaplain for the jail came up. The favourite candidate of the other members of the Board was an unsuccessful clergyman. David, when asked to vote for him, said, 'I have no objection; I hear that he has already preached a church empty, and if he will only preach the jail empty too, he is just the man for our money.'

The Squire and his Servant.

A Scotch squire was one day riding out with his man. Opposite a hole in a steep bank the master stopped and said, 'John, I saw a badger go in there.' 'Did you?' said John; 'will you hold my horse, sir?' 'Certainly,' answered the squire, and away rushed John for a spade. He got one and dug furiously for half an hour, the squire looking on with an amused look. At last John exclaimed, 'I can't find him, sir.' 'I should be surprised if you could,' said the squire, 'for it is ten years since I saw him go in.'

How to punish a Donkey.

Old Andrew Leslie got his living by breaking stones on the highway. He used to ride to and from his work on a donkey. This donkey, he said, fed at the roadsides, but the farmers said that he turned the creature into their fields. One day Mr. Brown told him plainly what was suspected. 'Eh, Mr. Brown,' he answered, 'I have no temptation to do such a thing, for my Neddy will eat nothing but nettles and thistles.' A few days later Mr. Brown saw Neddy in one of his own fields devouring clover as fast as he could. 'Hollo, Andrew,' said he; 'I thought you told me that your donkey would eat nothing but nettles and thistles.' 'So I did,' replied Andrew coolly; 'but to-day he misbehaved: he nearly threw me over his head, and so I put him in your clover field to punish him.'

Proper Payment.

A boy went into a baker's shop and bought a twopenny loaf. It seemed to him rather small, so he said that he did not believe it to be of full weight. 'Never mind,' answered the baker, 'you will have the less to carry.' 'True,' replied the lad, and throwing three-halfpence on the counter he left the shop. The baker called after him, 'Hi! this is not enough money.' 'Never mind,' said the boy, 'you will have the less to count.'

A Broad Hint.

An impudent fellow, whom it was hard to escape, tried for some days to force his company on Sir Andrew Agnew. At last Sir Andrew was seen alone, and someone asked him how he had contrived to get rid of the man. 'I was obliged,' he answered, 'to give him a broad hint.' 'But,' remarked his friend, 'I thought he was one of those people who cannot take a hint.' 'He was forced to take mine,' said Sir Andrew, 'for as he would not go out of the door I threw him out of the window.'

The Horse and the Oysters.

In the days when people often travelled on horseback a gentleman came one very cold evening into an inn at Chelmsford. Finding so many persons sitting round the fire that he could not get near it, he told the hostler to give his horse a peck of oysters. 'Will your horse eat oysters, sir?' asked the hostler. 'Try him,' was the answer. Everyone ran to see the wonder, the fireside was cleared, and the gentleman had a choice of seats. Soon the hostler came back and said that the horse would not eat the oysters. 'Very well,' replied the gentleman, 'I must eat them myself, then.'

The Corporal's Watch.

A corporal in the life-guards of Frederick the Great was a brave but rather vain fellow. He could not afford a watch, but he managed to buy a chain, and this he wore with a bullet at the end. The king, hearing of this, thought he would have a little fun at the soldier's expense, so he said to him, 'It is six o'clock by my watch; what is it by yours?' The man drew the bullet from his pocket and answered, 'My watch does not mark the hour, but it tells me every moment that it is my duty to face death for your Majesty.' 'Here, my friend,' said Frederick, offering him his own costly watch, 'take this, that you may be able to tell the hour also.'

Three Toasts.

When the Earl of Stair was ambassador in Holland he was once at a banquet with the French and Austrian ambassadors. The Frenchman proposed the health of his master, calling him 'The Sun.' The Austrian then proposed the health of his mistress, calling her 'The Moon.' The Earl of Stair was equal to the occasion, for when his turn came he proposed the health of his sovereign as 'Joshua, the son of Nun, who made the sun and moon to stand still.'[1]

52. The following is an outline of one of Æsop's fables :—

1. Ass carrying salt—passing through stream—falls—loses load.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 6.

2. Next day loaded with salt—lies down in stream.
3. Master resolves to teach lesson—third journey load of sponge.
4. Ass lies down—load heavier.

53. This outline may be filled in thus :—

An ass laden with salt happened to fall while passing through a stream. *The water melted the salt*, and the ass *on getting up was delighted* to find himself with nothing to carry. Next day he had to pass again, laden with salt, through the same stream. *Remembering how the water had yesterday rid him of his burden*, he lay down purposely, and was again rid of it. *But clever as he was his master was cleverer*, and resolved to teach him a lesson. On the third journey he therefore placed on the creature's back several bags filled with sponges. The ass lay down as before, but on getting up he found that his load, instead of being much lighter, was much heavier.

54. In the fable, as thus told, there are several points (printed in italics) which are not in the outline. Such little details help to make the story more real.

OUTLINES

to be turned into continuous narrative.[1]

The Snake's Gratitude.

1. Cold winter's day—snake half dead.
2. Peasant pities it—places in bosom—takes home—lays it before fire.
3. Snake revives—attacks children—peasant kills it.

The Lion and the Mouse.

1. Lion sleeping—mouse happens to wake him.
2. Lion going to kill mouse—mouse begs for mercy—mercy granted.
3. Lion caught in a net—roars—mouse hears him—nibbles net.

The Frog and the Ox.

1. Ox feeding in marshy meadow—treads among young frogs—kills many.
2. One that escapes tells mother—'Such a big beast!'
3. Vain mother asks, 'So big?'—'Much bigger.'
4. Mother puffs out—'So big?'—'Much bigger.'
5. This several times—at last mother bursts.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 7

The Hare and the Tortoise.

1. Hare jeers at tortoise for slowness.
2. Tortoise proposes race hare accepts.
3. Tortoise starts—hare says, 'Will take a nap first.'
4. When hare awakes tortoise has passed post.
5. 'Slow and steady wins the race.'

Dividing the Spoils.

1. Lion, ass, and fox hunting—much spoil.
2. Lion asks ass to divide—divides into three equal parts.
3. Lion angry—kills ass asks fox to divide.
4. Fox makes very great heap for lion and very little one for himself.
5. 'Who taught you to divide so well?'—'The dead ass.'

The Wind and the Sun.

1. Wind and sun dispute which is stronger.
2. Agree to try on passing traveller—which can soonest make him take off cloak.
3. Wind begins—blows furiously—traveller holds cloak the tighter.
4. Sun shines—traveller too warm—throws off cloak.
5. Kindness better than force.

The Bundle of Sticks.

1. Quarrelsome brothers—father speaks in vain.
2. Asks sons to break bundle of sticks—each tries and fails.
3. Asks them to undo bundle and break separate sticks—easy.
4. Brothers united, like bundle—quarrelsome, like separate sticks.
5. 'Union is strength.'

The Goose with the Golden Eggs.

1. Man has goose—lays golden egg daily.
2. Man greedy—thinks inside must be full of gold—kills goose—finds her like all other geese.

The Frogs asking for a King.

1. Frogs ask Jupiter for a king—he laughs at their folly—throws them a log.
2. The splash frightens them finding log still they venture to look at it at last jump on it and despise it.
3. Ask for another king—Jupiter annoyed—sends them a stork.
4. Stork eats many—the rest ask Jupiter to take stork away—he says 'No.' 'Let well alone.'

The Battle of the Birds and Beasts.

1. Bat is a beast, but flies like a bird.
2. Battle between birds and beasts—bat keeps aloof.
3. Beasts appear to be winning—bat joins them.
4. Birds rally and win—bat found among victors.
5. Peace made—birds and beasts condemn bat—bat never since dared show face in daylight.

The Hart and the Vine.

1. Hart fleeing from hunters—hides among leaves of vine hunters pass without seeing him.
2. He begins to eat leaves—a hunter hears noise shoots hart.
3. 'Vine protected me; I injured it; deserved my fate.'

The Use of War.

1. Lion and bear find dead fawn—fight for body.
2. Neither wins—both lie down faint with loss of blood.
3. A fox comes by and carries off the fawn.

The Lion and the Bulls.

1. Three bulls feeding together in a meadow.
2. Lion wished to eat them—afraid of the three.
3. Lion tells each that the others have been slandering.
4. Bulls quarrel—lion kills each separately.

The Ass's Shadow.

1. Young man hires ass in a hot country.
2. Summer's day—heat scorching—rest at noon.
3. Rider wants to rest in shadow of ass driver also wants to.
4. 'I hired the ass'—'You did not hire the shadow.'
5. While men are disputing ass runs away.[1]

Stories in Verse.

55. The following poem, by Charles Kingsley, tells a touching little story:—

Three fishers went sailing away to the west,
Away to the west as the sun went down;

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 8.

Each thought on the woman who loved him the best,
And the children stood watching them out of the town.
For men must work, and women must weep,
And there's little to earn, and many to keep,
Though the harbour bar be moaning.

Three wives sat up in the lighthouse tower,
And trimmed the lamps as the sun went down;
They looked at the squall, and they looked at the shower,
And the night-rack came rolling up, ragged and brown!
But men must work, and women must weep,
Though storms be sudden and waters deep,
And the harbour bar be moaning.

Three corpses lay out on the shining sands,
In the morning gleam, as the tide went down,
And the women are weeping and wringing their hands
For those who will never come home to the town.
For men must work, and women must weep,
And the sooner it's over the sooner to sleep,
And good-bye to the bar and its moaning.

56. Here is the same story, told in prose :—

One afternoon in a western port, three fishermen might be seen walking slowly down towards the beach. Heavy masses of clouds were moving rapidly overhead; the setting sun had tinged the sky an angry crimson, and the waves broke with a moaning noise over the bar at the mouth of the harbour. The fishermen knew that a storm was threatening, but still they were going to sea, for their families were large and their earnings had of late been small. Yet they were sad at heart, and as they sailed away they thought of the dear wives left behind, and of the dear children watching them out of the town. The women were so anxious that they could not rest at home, so they went up to the lighthouse to trim the lamps and peer out into the darkness. The storm came on even sooner than was expected. A huge billow caught the fishermen's boat and sank it, and the tide carried their dead bodies to the shore. By morning the storm had passed, and the rising sun shone on the wet sand and on three poor women wringing their hands over the corpses of their husbands.

Note that in this prose rendering there is no attempt to preserve the poetry. Attention has been paid to the story only, and that has been told in the simplest manner.

Stories in Verse

to be turned into prose.

Meddlesome Matty.

Oh, how one ugly trick may spoil
The sweetest and the best!
Matilda, though a pleasant child,
One ugly trick possessed,
Which, like a cloud before the skies,
Hid all her better qualities.

Now she would lift the teapot lid,
To peep at what was in it;
Or tilt the kettle, if you did
But turn your back a minute.
In vain you told her not to touch,
Her trick of meddling grew so much.

Her grandmamma went out one day,
And by mistake she laid
Her spectacles and snuffbox gay
Too near the little maid;
'Ah! well,' thought she, 'I'll try them on,
As soon as grandmamma is gone.'

Forthwith she placed upon her nose
The glasses round and wide;
And looking round, as I suppose,
The snuffbox too she spied;
'O what a pretty box is this!
I'll open it,' said little Miss.

'I know that grandmamma would say,
"Don't meddle with it, dear";
But then she's far enough away,
And no one else is near;
Besides, what can there be amiss
In opening such a box as this?'

So thumb and finger went to work
To move the stubborn lid;
And presently a mighty jerk,
The mighty mischief did;

For all at once, ah! woful case,
The snuff came puffing in her face.

Poor eyes and nose and mouth and chin
A dismal sight presented;
And, as the snuff got further in,
Sincerely she repented.
In vain she ran about for ease,
She could do nothing else but sneeze.

She dashed the spectacles away,
To wipe her tingling eyes,
And as in twenty bits they lay,
Her grandmamma she spies:
'Hey day! and what's the matter now?'
Cried grandmamma with lifted brow.

Matilda smarting with the pain,
And tingling still, and sore,
Made many a promise to refrain
From *meddling* evermore;
And 'tis a fact, as I have heard,
She ever since has kept her word.—*Jane Taylor.*

The Chimney-Sweep.

When my mother died I was very young,
And my father sold me while yet my tongue
Could scarcely cry, ''Weep! 'Weep! 'Weep! 'Weep!'
So your chimneys I sweep, and in soot I sleep.

There's little Tom Dacre, who cried when his head,
That curled like a lamb's back, was shaved; so I said,
'Hush, Tom! never mind it, for when your head's bare,
You know that the soot cannot spoil your white hair.'

And so he was quiet; and that very night,
As Tom was a-sleeping, he had such a sight,
That thousands of sweepers, Dick, Joe, Ned and Jack,
Were all of them locked up in coffins of black.

And by came an angel, who had a bright key,
And he opened the coffins and set them all free;
Then down a green plain, leaping, laughing, they run,
And wash in a river, and shine in the sun.

Then naked and white, all their bags left behind,
They rise upon clouds, and sport in the wind;
And the angel told Tom, if he'd be a good boy,
He'd have God for his Father and never want joy.

And so Tom awoke; and we rose in the dark,
And got with our bags and our brushes to work;
Though the morning was cold, Tom was happy and warm;
So, if all do their duty, they need not fear harm.

William Blake.

The Beggar Man.

Around the fire, one wintry night,
The farmer's rosy children sat;
The fagot lent its blazing light,
And jokes went round, and careless chat;

When, hark! a gentle hand they hear
Low tapping at the bolted door;
And thus, to gain their willing ear,
A feeble voice was heard implore:—

'Cold blows the blast across the moor,
The sleet drives hissing in the wind;
Yon toilsome mountain lies before
A dreary, treeless waste behind.

'My eyes are weak and dim with age,
No road, no path can I descry;
And these poor rags ill stand the rage
Of such a keen, inclement sky.

'So faint I am, these tottering feet
No more my palsied frame can bear;
My freezing heart forgets to beat,
And drifting snows my tomb prepare.

'Open your hospitable door,
And shield me from the biting blast:
Cold, cold it blows across the moor,
The weary moor that I have passed!'

With hasty steps the farmer ran,
And close beside the fire they place
The poor half-frozen beggar man,
With shaking limbs and pale-blue face.

The little children flocking came,
And chafed his frozen hands in theirs;
And busily the good old dame
A comfortable mess prepares.

Their kindness cheered his drooping soul;
And slowly down his wrinkled cheek
The big round tear was seen to roll,
Which told the thanks he could not speak.

The children then began to sigh,
And all their merry chat was o'er;
And yet they felt, they knew not why,
More glad than they had done before.—*Aiken.*

Casabianca.

The boy stood on the burning deck,
Whence all but he had fled;
The flame, that lit the battle's wreck,
Shone round him—o'er the dead.
Yet beautiful and bright he stood,
As born to rule the storm,
A creature of heroic blood,
A proud though child-like form!

The flames rolled on; he would not go,
Without his father's word;—
That father, faint in death below,
His voice no longer heard.
He called aloud: 'Say, father! say
If yet my task is done?'—
He knew not that the chieftain lay
Unconscious of his son.

'Speak, father!' once again he cried,
'If I may yet be gone!
And'—but the booming shots replied,
And fast the flames rolled on.
Upon his brow he felt their breath,
And in his waving hair,
And looked from that lone post of death,
In still, yet brave despair;

And shouted but once more aloud,
'My father! must I stay?'

While o'er him fast, through sail and shroud,
The wreathing fires made way.
They wrapped the ship in splendour wild,
They caught the flag on high,
And streamed above the gallant child,
Like banners in the sky.

There came a burst of thunder sound,—
The boy!—oh, where was he?
Ask of the winds, that far around
With fragments strewed the sea,—
With mast, and helm, and pennon fair,
That well had borne their part!
But the noblest thing that perished there,
Was that young faithful heart!—*Mrs. Hemans.*

Principle put to the Test.

A youngster at school, more grave than the rest,
Had once his integrity put to the test:—
His comrades had plotted an orchard to rob,
And asked him to come and assist in the job.

He was very much shocked, and answered—'Oh no!
What, rob our poor neighbour! I pray you don't go!
Besides, the man's poor, his orchard's his bread;
Then think of his children, for they must be fed.'

'You speak very fine, and you look very grave,
But apples we want, and apples we'll have;
If you will go with us, we'll give you a share,
If not, you shall have neither apple nor pear.'

They spoke, and Tom pondered—'I see they will go;
Poor man! what a pity to injure him so!
Poor man! I would save him his fruit if I could,
But staying behind will do him no good.

'If this matter depended alone upon me,
His apples might hang till they dropped from the tree;
But since they *will* take them, I think I'll go too;
He will lose none by me, though I get a few.'

His scruples thus silenced, Tom felt more at ease,
And went with his comrades the apples to seize;
He blamed and protested, but joined in the plan;
He shared in the plunder, but pitied the man.—*Cowper.*

The Sands of Dee.

'O Mary, go and call the cattle home,
And call the cattle home,
And call the cattle home,
Across the sands of Dee!'
The western wind was wild and dark with foam,
And all alone went she.

The creeping tide came up along the sand,
And o'er and o'er the sand,
And round and round the sand,
As far as eye could see;
The blinding mist came up and hid the land,
And never home came she.

Oh, is it weed, or fish, or floating hair,—
A tress of golden hair,
Of drownèd maiden's hair,
Above the nets at sea?
Was never salmon yet that shone so fair,
Among the stakes of Dee!

They rowed her in across the rolling foam,
The cruel, crawling foam,
The cruel, hungry foam,
To her grave beside the sea;
But still the boatmen hear her call the cattle home
Across the sands of Dee.—*Charles Kingsley.*

The 'Northern Star.'

The *Northern Star*
Sailed over the bar
Bound to the Baltic Sea;
In the morning gray
She stretched away:—
'Twas a weary day to me!

For many an hour,
In sleet and shower,
By the lighthouse rock I stray;
And watch till dark
For the wingèd bark
Of him that is far away.

The castle's bound
I wander round,
Amidst the grassy graves;
But all I hear
Is the north wind drear,
And all I see are the waves.

The *Northern Star*
Is set afar,
Set in the Baltic Sea;
And the waves have spread
The sandy bed
That holds my love from me.

Bruce and the Spider.

King Bruce of Scotland flung himself down,
In a lonely mood to think;
'Tis true he was a monarch, and wore a crown,
But his heart was beginning to sink.

For he had been trying to do a great deed,
To make his people glad;
He had tried and tried, but couldn't succeed,
And so he became quite sad.

He flung himself down in low despair,
As grieved as man could be;
And after a while, as he pondered there,
'I'll give it all up,' said he.

Now just at the moment a spider dropped,
With its silken cobweb clew,
And the king in the midst of his thinking stopped
To see what the spider would do.

'Twas a long way up to the ceiling dome,
And it hung by a rope so fine,
That how it would get to its cobweb home
King Bruce could not divine.

It soon began to cling and crawl
Straight up with strong endeavour;
But down it came with a slipping sprawl,
As near to the ground as ever.

Up, up it ran, nor a second did stay,
To utter the least complaint,
Till it fell still lower; and there it lay,
A little dizzy and faint.

Its head grew steady—again it went,
And travelled a half-yard higher;
'Twas a delicate thread it had to tread,
And a road where its feet would tire.

Again it fell, and swung below;
But again it quickly mounted,
Till up and down, now fast, now slow,
Six brave attempts were counted.

'Sure,' cried the king, 'that foolish thing
Will strive no more to climb,
When it toils so hard to reach and cling,
And tumbles every time.'

But up the insect went once more,—
Ah me! 'tis an anxious minute;
He's only a foot from his cobweb door,—
Oh say will he lose or win it?

Steadily, steadily, inch by inch,
Higher and higher he got,
And a bold little run at the very last pinch
Put him into his native cot.

'Bravo! bravo!' the king cried out;
'All honour to those who try!
The spider up there defied despair;
He conquered, and why shouldn't I?'

And Bruce of Scotland braced his mind
And gossips tell the tale,
That he tried once more, as he tried before,
And that time he did not fail.

Pay goodly heed, all ye who read,
And beware of saying, 'I can't;'
'Tis a cowardly word, and apt to lead
To idleness, folly, and want.

Whenever you find your heart despair
Of doing some goodly thing,
Con over this strain, try bravely again,
And remember the spider and king.—*Eliza Cook.*

Lord Ullin's Daughter.

A chieftain, to the Highlands bound,
Cries, 'Boatman, do not tarry!
And I'll give thee a silver pound,
To row us o'er the ferry.'—

'Now, who be ye would cross Loch Gyle,
This dark and stormy water?'—
'O! I'm the chief of Ulva's Isle,
And this, Lord Ullin's daughter.

'And fast before her father's men
Three days we've fled together;
For should he find us in the glen,
My blood would stain the heather.

'His horsemen hard behind us ride;
Should they our steps discover,
Then who will cheer my bonny bride,
When they have slain her lover?'—

Out spoke the hardy Highland wight,
'I'll go, my chief—I'm ready:
It is not for your silver bright,
But for your winsome lady:

'And, by my word! the bonny bird
In danger shall not tarry;
So, though the waves are raging white,
I'll row you o'er the ferry.'—

By this the storm grew loud apace,
The water-wraith was shrieking;
And in the scowl of heaven, each face
Grew dark as they were speaking.

But still, as wilder blew the wind,
And as the night grew drearer,
Adown the glen rode armed men,
Their trampling sounded nearer.

'O haste thee, haste!' the lady cries,
'Though tempests round us gather;
I'll meet the raging of the skies,
But not an angry father.'—

The boat has left a stormy land,
A stormy sea before her,—
When, oh! too strong for human hand,
The tempest gathered o'er her.

And still they rowed amidst the roar
Of waters fast prevailing:
Lord Ullin reached that fatal shore,—
His wrath was changed to wailing.

For, sore dismayed, through storm and shade
His child he did discover;—
One lovely hand she stretched for aid,
And one was round her lover.

'Come back! come back!' he cried in grief,
'Across this stormy water;
And I'll forgive your Highland chief,
My daughter! oh, my daughter!'

'Twas vain: the loud waves lashed the shore,
Return or aid preventing;—
The waters wild went o'er his child,
And he was left lamenting.—*Campbell.*

Fidelity.

A barking sound the shepherd hears,
A cry as of a dog or fox;
He halts, and searches with his eye
Among the scattered rocks:
And now at distance can discern
A stirring in a brake of fern;
And instantly a dog is seen,
Glancing through that covert green.

The dog is not of mountain breed;
Its motions, too, are wild and shy;
With something, as the shepherd thinks,
Unusual in its cry:
Nor is there any one in sight
All round, in hollow or on height;
Nor shout nor whistle strikes his ear—
What is the creature doing here?

It was a cove, a huge recess,
That keeps, till June, December's snow;
A lofty precipice in front,
A silent tarn below;
Far in the bosom of Helvellyn,
Remote from public road or dwelling,
Pathway, or cultivated land;
From trace of human foot or hand.

Not free from boding thoughts, a while
The shepherd stood; then makes his way
O'er rocks and stones, following the dog
As quickly as he may;
Nor far had gone before he found
A human skeleton on the ground!
The appalled discoverer with a sigh
Looks round to learn the history.

From those abrupt and perilous rocks
The man had fallen—the place of fear!
At length upon the shepherd's mind
It breaks, and all is clear:
He instantly recalled the name,
And who he was, and whence he came;
Remembered, too, the very day
On which the traveller passed that way.

But here a wonder, for whose sake
This lamentable tale I tell;—
A lasting monument of words
This wonder merits well:
The dog, which still was hovering nigh,
Repeating the same timid cry,
This dog had been, through three months' space,
A dweller in that savage place!

Yes, proof was plain that since the day
When this ill-fated traveller died,
The dog had watched about the spot,
Or by his master's side:
How nourished there through that long time
He knows who gave that love sublime;
And gave that strength of feeling great,
Above all human estimate.—*Wordsworth.*

Bishop Hatto.

The summer and autumn had been so wet
That in winter the corn was growing yet;
'Twas a piteous sight to see all around
The grain lie rotting on the ground.

Every day the starving poor
Crowded around Bishop Hatto's door;
For he had a plentiful last year's store,
And all the neighbourhood could tell
His granaries were furnished well.

At last Bishop Hatto appointed a day
To quiet the poor without delay;
He bade them to his great barn repair,
And they should have food for the winter there.

Rejoiced, such tidings good to hear,
The poor folk flocked from far and near;
The great barn was full as it could hold,
Of women, and children, and young, and old.

Then, when he saw it could hold no more,
Bishop Hatto he made fast the door;
And while for mercy on Christ they call,
He set fire to the barn and burned them all.

'I' faith, 'tis an excellent bonfire!' quoth he,
'And the country is greatly obliged to me,
For ridding it, in these times forlorn,
Of rats, that only consume the corn.'

So then to his palace returnèd he,
And he sat down to supper merrily;
And he slept that night like an innocent man;
But Bishop Hatto never slept again.

In the morning, as he entered the hall,
Where his picture hung against the wall,
A sweat, like death, all over him came,
For the rats had eaten it out of the frame.

As he looked, there came a man from the farm,
He had a countenance white with alarm;
'My Lord, I opened your granaries this morn,
And the rats had eaten all your corn.'

Another came running presently,
And he was pale as pale could be:
'Fly! my Lord Bishop, fly!' quoth he,
'Ten thousand rats are coming this way,
The Lord forgive you for yesterday!'

'I'll go to my tower on the Rhine,' replied he,
''Tis the safest place in Germany;
The walls are high, and the shores are steep,
And the stream is strong, and the water deep.'

Bishop Hatto fearfully hastened away,
And he crossed the Rhine without delay,
And reached his tower, and barred with care
All the windows, door, and loopholes there.

He laid him down, and closed his eyes,
But soon a scream made him arise;
He started, and saw two eyes of flame
On his pillow, from whence the screaming came.

He listened and looked; it was only the cat;
But the Bishop he grew more fearful for that
For she sat screaming mad with fear
At the army of rats that was drawing near.

For they have swum over the river so deep,
And they have climbed the shores so steep;
And up the tower their way is bent
To do the work for which they were sent.

They are not to be told by the dozen or score,
By thousands they come, and by myriads and more;
Such numbers had never been heard of before,
Such a judgment had never been witnessed of yore.

Down on his knees the Bishop fell,
And faster and faster his beads did he tell,
As louder and louder drawing near,
The gnawing of their teeth he could hear.

And in at the window, and in at the door,
And through the walls helter-skelter they pour,
And down from the ceiling, and up through the floor,
From the right and the left, from behind and before,
From within and without, from above and below,
And all at once to the Bishop they go.

They have whetted their teeth against the stones;
And now they pick the Bishop's bones;
They gnaw the flesh from every limb,
For they were sent to do judgment on him.—*Southey.*

The Farmer and the Counsellor.

A Counsel in the Common Pleas,
  Who was esteem'd a mighty wit,
  Upon the strength of a chance hit,
Amid a thousand flippancies,
And his occasional bad jokes
  In bullying, bantering, browbeating,
  Ridiculing, and maltreating
Women or other timid folks,
In a late cause resolved to hoax
A clownish Yorkshire farmer—one
  Who, by his uncouth look and gait,
  Appear'd expressly meant by Fate
For being quizz'd and play'd upon.
So having tipp'd the wink to those
  In the back rows,
Who kept their laughter bottled down
  Until our wag should draw the cork,
He smiled jocosely on the clown,
  And went to work.
'Well, Farmer Numskull, how go calves at York?'
  'Why, not, sir, as they do with you,
  But on four legs instead of two!'
'Officer!' cried the legal elf,
Piqued at the laugh against himself,
  'Do, pray, keep silence down below there.—
Now look at me, clown, and attend:
Have I not seen you somewhere, friend?'
  'Yees—very like—I often go there!'
'Our rustic's waggish—quite laconic,'
The counsel cried with grin sardonic;
'I wish I'd known this prodigy,
This genius of the clods, when I
  On circuit was at York residing.—
Now, Farmer, do for once speak true—
Mind, you're on oath, so tell me, you

Who doubtless think yourself so clever,
Are there as many fools as ever
  In the West Riding?'—
'Why, no, sir—no; we've got our share,
But not so many as when *you* were there!'—*Horace Smith.*

Sleeping in Church.

Old South, a witty churchman reckoned,
Was preaching once to Charles the Second;
But, much too serious for a court
Who at all preaching made a sport,
He soon perceived his audience nod,
Deaf to the zealous man of God.
The doctor[1] stopped, began to call,
'Pray wake the Earl of Lauderdale;
My lord, why 'tis a monstrous thing,
You snore so loud you'll wake the king.'

A Friend in Need.

Curio, whose hat a nimble knave had snatched,
  Fat, clumsy, gouty, asthmatic, and old,
Panting against a post, his noddle scratched,
  And his sad story to a stranger told.

'Follow the thief,' replied the stander-by;
  'Ah, sir,' said he, 'these feet will wag no more.'
'Alarm the neighbourhood with hue and cry.'
  'Alas! I've roared as long as lungs could roar.'

'Then,' quoth the stranger, 'vain is all endeavour
  Sans voice to call, *sans* vigour to pursue:
And since your hat, of course, is gone for ever,
  I'll e'en make bold to take your wig; adieu!'

[1] Dr. South.

EASY ESSAYS.[1]

57. The following is an outline of a brief and simple essay on 'The Cat':—

1. Where found.
2. Why kept.
3. Fitted to be a beast of prey:—(*a*) Teeth; (*b*) Claws; (*c*) Pads.
4. Fitted for night prowling:—(*a*) Fur; (*b*) Eyes.
5. Fitted to be a pet.
6. Habits.

58. The outline may be filled in thus:—

A cat is found in nearly every house. Sometimes it is kept as a pet only, and sometimes it is kept only to catch mice, but most people keep one for both purposes. The cat is fitted by nature to be a beast of prey; hence its claws and teeth are sharp and long, and under its feet are pads, which enable it to walk without making a noise. The cat is also fitted for prowling at night. Its thick fur keeps it from feeling cold, and its wonderful eyes enable it to see almost in the dark. Cats make good pets because they are pretty, clean and gentle. They like to lie on something soft and warm. When stroked they purr. Kittens are very playful.

OUTLINES[2]

to be expanded into essays.

Dog.

1. Found nearly all over world; friend to man.
2. Uses:—Hunting, guarding, minding sheep, etc.
3. Description:—Teeth for tearing, legs for running, coat for warmth; differences between cat and dog.
4. Habits.

Kinds of Dogs.

1. Name various kinds.
2. Showing how structure of each kind fits it for its work; as
   (*a*) Greyhound—shape, legs, chest for swiftness.
   (*b*) Bloodhound—broad head, large nose for smell.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 9.
[2] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 10.

(*c*) Bulldog—size of head, strength of jaw and of body.
(*d*) Newfoundland—thick, oily coat, webbed feet.
&c., &c.

Stories of Dogs.

Tell a story about
(*a*) A faithful dog.
(*b*) A clever dog.

Hay.

1. Grass allowed to grow from early spring.
2. Ripe in June or July.
3. Cut with a scythe or machine.
4. Spread out to dry in sun—turned over—raked into 'cocks'—carted.

Corn.

1. Different kinds:—wheat, barley, oats.
2. Sown in spring (wheat sometimes late in autumn).
3. Ground prepared by ploughing, harrowing.
4. Sowing (describe).
5. Weeding.
6. Harvesting:—cut with sickle, scythe or machine—bound—carted.

Flour.

1. Wheat threshed to get grain and chaff from ear.
2. Winnowed to separate chaff from grain.
3. Ground in mill (wind, water, steam).
4. Skin (bran) separated from flour.

Bread.

1. Generally made from flour.
2. Flour mixed with water, a little salt and yeast, into sponge—yeast to make it 'rise.'
3. Made into loaves.
4. Baked in oven.

Butter.

1. Made from cream.
2. Milk placed in shallow pans—cream rises—skimmed.
3. Cream begins to turn sour—churned.
4. Describe churn.
5. Churning divides cream into butter and butter-milk.
6. Butter run off—butter washed.
7. Beaten, often salted, moulded.

Lion.

1. Cat kind—teeth, claws, sheath, pad.
2. About four feet high, tawny yellow, tufted tail, mane of male.
3. Lion like cat steals up to prey.
4. Brave.
5. Cubs playful.

Tiger.

1. Compare tiger and lion:—
   (*a*) Lion in Africa and Asia, tiger in Asia.
   (*b*) Tiger as strong, more fierce and cunning.
   (*c*) Tiger golden fur with black stripes, no mane, tail not tufted.
   (*d*) Tiger, like lion, lies in wait.
2. Man-eating tigers.
3. Hunted, often on elephants.

Elephant.

1. Largest land animal, eight to ten feet high.
2. Very heavy body, thick skin, little hair, legs thick.
3. Head large, tusks sixty to seventy pounds each.
4. Short neck; why?
5. Trunk; why needed?—describe.
6. Clever, obedient, faithful.

Stories of Elephants.

Tell a story showing cleverness of elephant.

Owl.

1. Night bird; therefore eyes large, hearing sharp, feathers thick.
2. Downy feathers make flight silent.
3. Beak and claws.
4. Food.
5. Haunts.

Swallow.

1. Made for speed; feathers firm and close, wings large, tail long and pointed, legs short.
2. Lives on insects; large, wide mouth.
3. Bird of passage; comes in spring, leaves in autumn.
4. Kinds:—
   (*a*) Swift ('Jack Screamer'), largest and swiftest.
   (*b*) Chimney martin or swallow—builds often under eaves.
   (*c*) Sand martin; smallest, builds in sandy banks or cliffs.

Cuckoo.

1. Named from cry.
2. Bird of passage—

   In April
   Come he will; . . . .
   In July
   He prepares to fly;
   In August
   Go he must.

3. Description:—size of magpie or small pigeon; colour:—blue grey above; white, with slaty bars below; wings black, with white at tips.
4. Lays egg in nest of other birds—often a hedge-sparrow.

Tea.

1. From China, Assam, Ceylon.
2. Evergreen shrub, glossy leaves, white flower.
3. Three crops a year, first and best in spring.
4. Leaves gathered, placed in shallow baskets, dried first in sun, then over charcoal; rolled between hands.
5. Two kinds, green and black.

Coffee.

1. Arabia, Brazil, East and West Indies, Ceylon.
2. Evergreen tree, eight to twelve feet high.
3. Tree bears a dark red berry, size of cherry, and containing two hard seeds (the coffee 'beans') each in a skin.
4. Berries gathered, dried, passed under rollers to remove skin.
5. Roasted in a closed iron vessel over slow fire.
6. Ground.

Coal.

1. How formed:—Places where forests, woods, etc., growing, sank—covered with water bringing soil—rose again—vegetable remains hardened into coal.
2. Hence found in layers.
3. Mining:—shaft, galleries.
4. Dangers:—fall of roof; flooding; explosions of 'fire-damp;' afterwards 'choke-damp.'
5. Safety lamp.

Iron.

1. Iron ore found in many places, worked on coal fields; why?
2. To drive away sulphur roasted in kiln, or with layers of coal on ground.

3. Mixed with coal and lime and placed in blast furnace.
4. Earthy matters unite with lime to form 'slag.'
5. Melted iron falls to bottom—run off—'cast iron.'
6. Carbon added to iron to make steel.

Spring.

1. What months?
2. Welcome season after short, cold days of winter.
3. Trees and flowers—blossom.
4. Sowing.
5. Pleasant walks in the country.

Christmas.

1. When?
2. Most general English holiday.
3. Why kept—'peace and goodwill.'
4. How kept:—business stopped; cards; presents; meetings of friends; Christmas fare; pantomimes.

Your School.

1. Name.
2. Situation.
3. History.
4. Subjects taught.
5. Games.
6. How you may do credit to it.

Any Town.

1. Name.
2. Situation.
3. Population.
4. Chief industry.
5. Chief buildings.
6. History.

'The University Boatrace.'

1. Between Oxford and Cambridge.
2. On the Thames, between Putney and Mortlake.
3. Every year, just before Easter.
4. Two boats—eight men and a coxswain in each.
5. Great interest, especially in London.
6. Crowds by river, rail and road.
7. The race—'Here they come!'—excitement—victory.
8. Trial of skill, strength and endurance.

Linen.

1. Made from flax-plant about four feet high, blue flower.
2. Ripe flax pulled up, dried.
3. Seed (linseed) removed by pulling stalks through a kind of comb.
4. Stalk consists of two parts, woody and fibrous.
5. Steeped in water to make separation of two easier.
6. Beaten to break woody part.
7. Combed to remove it.
8. Spun, bleached, woven.
9. Uses.

Blind Man's Buff.

1. One of the players has handkerchief tied over eyes.
2. Tries to catch any of the others.
3. If he catches anyone he must say who it is.
4. If he succeeds, player caught takes his place.
5. The fun of the game.

Cricket.

1. Describe wickets (size, position, &c.).
2. Describe bat and ball.
3. How many players?
4. How many 'in' at once? Their work?
5. Wicket keepers, bowlers, and the rest of the 'field.'
6. How 'runs' are made.
7. How a player is 'out.'
8. After one side is 'out'?
9. Which wins?

The Blacksmith's Shop.

1. Describe blacksmith.
2. His work.
3. Fire, bellows.
4. Anvil, hammers, tongs, water-trough.
5. 'The children coming home from school. . . .'

The Carpenter's Shop.

1. Work.
2. Bench, planes, chisels, hammers, mallets, axe, adze, gimlets, saws, rule.
3. Compare blacksmith and carpenter.

Soldier.

1. Appearance.
2. Work.

3. Where he lives in peace and in war.
4. Recruits, drill, reviews, band.
5. Battle.
6. Qualities of a soldier.

A Farm Servant.

1. Work varies with season.
2. In spring work connected with sowing.
3. Summer—weeding, haymaking.
4. Autumn—harvesting; sometimes ploughing.
5. Winter—looking after stock.

A Visit to Hampton Court.

1. Royal palace on north bank of Thames, about twelve miles from London.
2. First part built by Cardinal Wolsey; the later parts chiefly by William III. and Mary.
3. No longer a royal residence.
4. Chief rooms open to the public.
5. About a thousand pictures; valuable and interesting; among them portraits of the ladies of the courts of Charles II. and of William III.
6. Beautiful gardens.
7. The great vine, said to be the largest in Europe.
8. The Maze.
9. Bushy Park close by, 1,000 acres, with fine chestnut avenue.

Cleanliness.

1. Of person.
   (*a*) Describe pores. Waste of body passes through them like smoke up chimney; therefore must be kept open.
   (*b*) Diseases arise if waste cannot pass off.
   (*c*) Dirty person disagreeable.
2. Of clothes.
   Clean person impossible in dirty clothes.
3. Of houses.
   (*a*) Dust passes into lungs.
   (*b*) Dirty houses—bad smells.
   (*c*) Plague (formerly common) due to dirt.

Lying.

1. What it is—wilful attempt to deceive.
2. Words may be true and yet a lie because meant to deceive.

3. There may be lies without words.
4. Why wrong.
5. Consequence to liar—not believed even when speaking truth.
6. Fable 'Crying Wolf.'

Cruelty to Animals.

1. Animals can feel.
2. How would you like cruel treatment?
3. 'Do unto others. . . .'
4. Animals grateful for kindness.
5. Any story to show this.

Thrift.

1. 'Penny saved, penny gained.'
2. Name some things on which children spend money needlessly.
3. Advantages of saving:—'Look after the pence. . . .'; savings can be turned to account; provision for a 'rainy day.'
4. Aids to thrift:—Savings banks, building societies, &c.

'Make Hay while the Sun shines.'

1. Meaning of proverb. Hay is grass dried in the sun; if not 'made' on first opportunity, it may be spoiled by rain.
2. Proverb teaches us to miss no opportunity.
3. Reasons:—Do not know what may happen by to-morrow; chance perhaps lost for ever; 'The mill cannot grind with the water that is past.'
4. Story to show danger of putting off.

'A Rolling Stone gathers no Moss.'

1. Meaning of the proverb—persevere.
2. Illustrations:—
   (*a*) If you do not finish a study begun, *all* the time spent on it is wasted.
   (*b*) Three removes are as bad as a fire.
   (*c*) By staying in the same place you make friends and a position.

'Virtue is its own Reward.'

1. Virtue often gains for a man honour, wealth, friends.
2. But though it brought no such rewards it should be sought.
3. For the approval of one's own conscience is more important than the approval of any one else.

Subjects for Essays.[1]

1. Rabbit. 2. Fox. 3. Pig. 4. Mouse. 5. Bear. 6. Camel. 7. Monkey. 8. Sheep. 9. Goat. 10. Cow.

11. Hen. 12. Duck. 13. Robin. 14. Lark. 15. Canary. 16. Ostrich. 17. Eagle. 18. Pigeon. 19. Gull. 20. Sparrow.

21. Whale. 22. Seal.

23. Bee. 24. Spider. 25. Fly. 26. Butterfly.

27. Shark. 28. Herring. 29. Mackerel. 30. Crab. 31. Cod.

32. Frog. 33. Crocodile. 34. Turtle. 35. Adder.

36. Cocoa. 37. Sugar. 38. Sago.

39. Cork. 40. India-rubber.

41. Potato. 42. Turnip.

43. Salt. 44. Lead. 45. Tin. 46. Copper. 47. Gold.

48. Knife. 49. Glass. 50. Paper. 51. Soap. 52. Pins. 53. Needles. 54. Candles. 55. Cotton. 56. Silk. 57. Woollen cloth.

58. Autumn. 59. Winter.

60. Describe:—(*a*) A house. (*b*) A street. (*c*) A church. (*d*) Any village. (*e*) Any town. (*f*) A farm. (*g*) A mill. (*h*) The sea-side. (*i*) Common spring flowers. (*j*) The most beautiful place you have seen. (*k*) A snow-storm. (*l*) A thunder-storm.

61. Any game with marbles. 62. Making and flying kites. 63. Boating. 64. Swimming. 65. Fishing. 66. Football. 67. A paper chase. 68. Skating. 69. Lawn tennis.

70. Punctuality. 71. Industry. 72. Perseverance. 73. Obedience. 74. Bad language. 75. Good manners. 76. Good habits. 77. Temperance. 78. Honesty. 79. The 'Golden Rule.' 80. How to make yourself useful at home.

81. Describe the life and work of:—(*a*) A mason. (*b*) A gardener. (*c*) A teacher. (*d*) A doctor. (*e*) A sailor. (*f*) A policeman. (*g*) A postman. (*h*) A tailor. (*i*) A baker. (*j*) A shepherd. (*k*) A fisherman. (*l*) An errand-boy. (*m*) A painter.

82. Describe a visit to:—(*a*) The sea-side. (*b*) London or some other large town. (*c*) The Zoological Gardens or a menagerie. (*d*) A circus. (*e*) The British Museum. (*f*) The Tower of London. (*g*) Westminster Abbey. (*h*) A picture gallery.

83. Tell a story about:—(*a*) A dog. (*b*) A cat. (*c*) A horse. (*d*) A monkey. (*e*) A parrot. (*f*) An elephant. (*g*) A hen.

84. Tell any stories you know illustrating the following sayings:—

(*a*) 'Look before you leap.'

(*d*) 'Honesty is the best policy.'
(*e*) 'Count not your chickens before they are hatched.'
(*f*) 'A friend in need is a friend indeed.'
(*g*) 'Union is strength.'

85. Explain and illustrate the following proverbs:—
(*a*) 'A stitch in time saves nine.'
(*b*) 'People who live in glass houses should never throw stones.'
(*c*) 'A bird in hand is worth two in the bush.'
(*d*) 'Strike the iron while it is hot.'
(*e*) 'Touch pitch and be defiled.'
(*f*) 'Rome was not built in a day.'
(*g*) 'No gains without pains.'
(*h*) 'Nothing venture nothing win.'

LETTERS.

59. In writing a letter, care should be taken that the different parts are properly arranged.

60. First comes the **Address of the Writer.**

This is written at the top of the paper, towards the right side. If the address consists of several parts, each part is given a separate line; thus,

Bloomfield Lodge,
Spring Grove,
Kingston-on-Thames.

The second line begins a little further to the right than the first, the third a little further than the second, &c.

61. After the address comes the **Date of Writing.**

This should always be written in full, beginning a little further to the right than the last line of the address; thus,

39, Paternoster Row,
London, E.C.
4 March, 1889.

62. Next comes the **Form of Address.**

This is always placed towards the left of the page, and varies according to the relations between the sender and the receiver of the letter. Writing to an intimate friend, one may say 'My dear Tom,' or (a little less familiarly) 'My dear Brown.' Writing to a friend who is also a superior in age or position, one would say 'My dear Mr. Brown.' 'Dear Sir' is formal, but claims some small degree of acquaintance or regard. 'Sir' is purely formal. Similarly we may have 'My dear Annie,' 'My dear Mrs. Brown,' 'Dear Madam,' and 'Madam.'

63. After the form of address comes the **Letter.**

A friendly letter should be easy and pleasant in style—it should be, in fact, a talk on paper. In a business letter, on the other hand, the style is severe. The first aim of the writer is to make himself understood, the next to be brief.

64. After the letter comes the **Subscription,** as,

I am,
Sir,
Your obedient servant,
LLEWELLYN GRIFFITHS.

The subscription is arranged like the address, but begins further to the left. The form of subscription varies with the form of address.

65. A business letter ends with the **Address of the Person to whom it is Sent.**

This is written in the left corner. A friendly letter generally ends with the subscription.

EXAMPLES OF LETTERS.

Application for a Situation.

345, Lancaster Street,
Borough Road, S.E.
15 February, 1889.

Sir,

Seeing by your advertisement in this morning's 'Standard' that you are in need of an office boy, I beg leave to apply for the position. I have been for six years a pupil in the Commercial School, Old Bridge Street. My master permits me to refer you to him for an account of my conduct and abilities. I have therefore only to add that if I am fortunate enough to enter your employ, it shall be my aim to serve you diligently and faithfully.

I am,
Sir,
Your obedient servant,
THOMAS WATSON.

J. W. Chambers, Esq.
97, King William Street, E.C.

Letter from Macaulay to his Father.[1]

Shelford,
22 February, 1813.

My dear Papa,

As this is a whole holiday, I cannot find a better time for answering your letter. With respect to my health, I am very well, and tolerably cheerful, as Blundell, the best and most clever of all the scholars, is very kind, and talks to me, and takes my part. He is quite a friend of Mr. Preston's. The other boys, especially Lyon, a Scotch boy, and Wilberforce, are very good-natured, and we might have gone on very well, had not one, a Bristol fellow, come here. He is unanimously allowed to be a queer fellow, and is generally characterised as a foolish boy, and by most of us an ill-natured one. In my learning I do Xenophon every day, and twice a week the Odyssey, in which I am classed with Wilberforce, whom all the boys allow to be very clever, very droll, and very impudent. We do Latin verses twice a week, and I have not yet been laughed at, as Wilberforce is the only one who hears them, being in my class. We are exercised also once a week in English composition, and once in Latin composition, and letters of persons renowned in history to each other. We get by heart Greek grammar or Virgil every evening. As for sermon-writing, I have hitherto got off with credit, and I hope I shall keep up my reputation. We have had the first meeting of our debating society the other day, when a vote of censure was moved for upon Wilberforce, but he getting up said, 'Mr. President, I beg to second the motion.' By this means he escaped. The kindness which Mr. Preston shows me is very great. He always assists me in what I cannot do, and takes me to walk out with him every now and then. My room is a delightful snug little chamber, which nobody can enter, as there is a trick about opening the door. I sit like a king, with my writing-desk before me; for (would you believe it?) there is a writing desk in my chest of drawers; my books are on one side, my box of papers on the other, with my arm-chair

[1] This is an exact transcript of a letter written by Lord Macaulay, when a schoolboy of twelve.

and my candle; for every boy has a candlestick, snuffers, and extinguisher of his own. Being pressed for room, I will conclude what I have to say to-morrow, and ever remain,

Your affectionate son,
THOMAS B. MACAULAY.

From Sydney Smith to Charles Dickens.

[Address not published.]
May 14, 1842.

My dear Dickens,

I accept your obliging invitation conditionally. If I am invited by any man of greater genius than yourself, or one by whose works I have been more completely interested, I will repudiate you, and dine with the more splendid phenomenon of the two.

Ever yours sincerely,
SYDNEY SMITH.

From Dr. Johnson to Warren Hastings, Governor General of Bombay.

London,
9 Jan., 1781.

Sir,

Amidst the importance and multiplicity of affairs in which your great office engages you, I take the liberty of recalling your attention for a moment to literature, and will not prolong the interruption by an apology, which your character makes needless.

Mr. Hoole, a gentleman long known and long esteemed in the India House, after having translated Tasso, has undertaken Ariosto. How well he is qualified for his undertaking he has already shown. He is desirous, Sir, of your favour in promoting his proposals, and flatters me by supposing that my testimony may advance his interest.

It is a new thing for a clerk of the India House to translate poets. It is new for a Governor of Bengal to patronise learning. That he may find his ingenuity rewarded, and that learning may flourish under your protection, is the wish of,

Sir,
Your most humble servant,
SAM. JOHNSON.

From the poet Gray to the Duke of Grafton.

Cambridge,
July, 1768.

My Lord,

Your Grace has dealt nobly with me; and the same delicacy of mind that induced you to confer this favour on me, unsolicited and unexpected, may perhaps make you averse to receive my sincerest thanks and grateful acknowledgements. Yet your Grace must excuse me, they will have their way: they are indeed but words; yet I know and feel they come from my heart, and therefore are not wholly unworthy of your Grace's acceptance. I even flatter myself (such is my pride) that you have some little satisfaction in your own work. If I did not deceive myself in this, it would complete the happiness of,

My Lord,
Your Grace's most obliged and devoted servant,
THOMAS GRAY.

From the poet Gray to Horace Walpole.

[Everything except the body of the letter is omitted.]

I was hindered in my last, and so could not give you all the trouble I would have done. The description of a road, which your coach wheels have so often honoured, it would be needless to give you; suffice it that I arrived safe[1] at my uncle's, who is a great hunter in imagination: his dogs take up every chair in the house, so I am forced to stand at this present writing; and though the gout forbids him galloping after them in the field, yet he continues still to regale his ears and nose with their comfortable noise and smell. He holds me mighty cheap, I perceive, for walking when I should ride, and reading when I should hunt. My comfort amidst all this is, that I have at the distance of half a mile through a green lane, a forest [Burnham Beeches] (the vulgar call it a common) all my own, at least as good as so, for I spy no human thing in it but myself. It is a little chaos of mountains and precipices; mountains, it is true, that do not ascend much above the clouds, nor are the declivities quite so amazing as Dover cliff; but just such hills as people who love their necks as well as I do may venture to climb, and crags that give the eye as much pleasure as if they were more dangerous: both vale and hill are covered with most venerable beeches, and other very reverend vegetables, that, like most other ancient people, are always dreaming out their old stories to the winds,—

[1] At Burnham in Buckinghamshire.

'And as they bow their hoary tops relate,
In murmuring sounds, the dark decrees of fate;
While visions, as poetic eyes avow,
Cling to each leaf and swarm on every bough.'

At the foot of one of these squats me, and there I grow to the trunk for a whole morning. The timorous hare and sportive squirrel gambol around me like Adam in Paradise, before he had an Eve; but I think he did not use to read Virgil, as I commonly do there. In this situation I often converse with my Horace, aloud too, that is talk to you, but I do not remember that I ever heard you answer me. I beg pardon for taking all the conversation to myself, but it is entirely your own fault. I shall be in town in about three weeks. Adieu.

Outlines

to be expanded into letters.

To an Uncle.

1. Very kind of you to remember my birthday—delighted to receive a watch from you.
2. Full of gratitude—had often wished for a watch.
3. Will take great care of it—never look at it without thinking of kind giver.

To his Parents, from a Boy who has just left Home for Business.

1. Have been here a month.
2. At first confused by number of clerks and by persons calling.
3. Had to copy letters, and go on errands.
4. The master and fellow-clerks all kind.
5. Feel separation from home and friends—look forward to first holiday.

Your Last Holidays.

1. What the holidays were.
2. Where you spent them.
3. Who was with you.
4. What you did.

A Pleasant Walk.

1. From —— to ——, with ——.
2. Description of the district through which you passed.
3. Anything interesting which you saw or heard or did.

To your Father, describing a Visit to some Relatives.

1. Your journey to ——; how you went—who met you.
2. The arrival at your relatives'—whom you saw.
3. What you have been doing.

From a Town Child to a Country Child.

1. Town crowded—noisy—dirty—glad to get into country.
2. Shall never forget visit to the country last summer.
3. No streets—few houses—beautiful views—quiet—sweet air.
4. Fine weather—many enjoyable walks.
5. Returned to town almost envying a country life.

Answer from Country Child to Town Child.

1. You almost envying country life—I almost envying town life.
2. Country has the advantages you describe, but you saw it in summer.
3. Difficult to get about in bad weather—especially in winter when much bad weather.
4. Dull—no libraries, exhibitions, meetings, concerts, &c.
5. Town may have all the disadvantages named, but always plenty to see, opportunities for study, friendly intercourse, entertainments.
6. Travelling easy.

Application for a Situation.

1. Have seen advertisement for —— in ——; beg leave to apply.
2. Age—school—previous employment (if any).
3. Character.

Request to Teacher.

1. Have applied to —— for place as ——.
2. Was asked to name someone who would speak as to character and abilities.
3. Took the liberty of naming you—hope you will excuse.
4. Thanking for all past kindness.

Letter to Teacher.

1. An opening occurred for me at ——; father thought best to avail myself of it.
2. Therefore have left school.
3. Thanks for care bestowed on education—and many acts of personal kindness.
4. Never shall forget years at school—will always try to do it credit.

Inviting a Friend to Tea.

1. Can you come to tea—day—hour.
2. My birthday—several friends coming.
3. Tea in orchard—then cricket in field.
4. Hope mother will let you come—be home by nine.

Accepting Invitation.

1. Thanks for invitation—happy to accept.
2. Glad to meet ——.
3. Look forward to pleasant evening.

Declining Invitation.

1. Thanks for invitation—should have been glad to come.
2. Sorry to lose chance of meeting ——.
3. Father some time ago arranged to take me and my brothers to ——.
4. Hope you will have pleasant evening and many happy returns.

Study of Shorthand.

1. Teacher of shorthand visited school yesterday afternoon.
2. One of us read paragraph from newspaper—he took down every word in shorthand—then read to us.
3. Describe the advantages of shorthand.
   (*a*) Great saving of one's own time in making notes.
   (*b*) Ease in making notes of lectures, sermons, &c.
   (*c*) Much used in business.
   (*d*) Essential for newspaper reports.
4. Class to be formed—mean to join.

Returning a Book.

1. Thank you very much for loan of ——.
2. Now return it by ——.
3. How you liked it.
4. What you think of it.

A Day's Boating.

1. Last Saturday a holiday—went boating with three friends.
2. Train London to Richmond—walked up the hill to see the beautiful view—day being clear saw Windsor Castle.
3. Took boat—rowed in turns, two at a time.
4. Passed Twickenham—pretty little town on Middlesex side.
5. Teddington—highest point reached by tide—lowest lock on Thames.

6. Through lock—Kingston—on Surrey side—town more than a thousand years old.
7. Had taken provisions—landed on towing path—had lunch.
8. Rowed up to Hampton Court—visited Palace—admired pictures and gardens.
9. Made tea on bank.
10. Back to Richmond—and London—most enjoyable day.

Subjects for Letters.[1]

1. A day at your school.
2. A walk in the country.
3. A holiday.
4. A cricket match.
5. A football match.
6. A paper chase.
7. A visit to the seaside.
8. A visit to a town.
9. Any journey which you have made.
10. Any exhibition which you have seen.
11. A description of Christmas written to a child living in a country where Christmas is not much regarded.
12. A description of winter written to a child living in India.
13. Thanks to your uncle for presenting you with a pony.
14. A friend is about to keep a dog. Write him a letter telling him how to treat it.
15. What you would like to be when you leave school (with reasons).
16. Your favourite book.
17. Your favourite in history.
18. Where you would like to live if you left your own country. Give reasons.
19. The advantages of living in a town.
20. The advantages of living in the country.
21. An account of some meeting which you have attended.
22. The life of a missionary.
23. The life of an engine-driver.
24. The benefits of education.
25. An evening party.
26. The last examination which you took.
27. A short history of yourself.
28. A summer morning.
29. The evils of war.
30. Amusements.
31. What you would like to do in the next summer holiday.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 11.

GRAMMAR.[1]

Concord.

66. A Verb must agree with its Subject in Number and Person, as

I am going to school.
He is going to school.
We are going to school.

In the first sentence the Verb *am going* is of the Singular Number, First Person, because its Subject *I* is of the Singular Number, First Person.

In the second sentence *is going* is of the Singular Number, Third Person, because its Subject *he* is of the Singular Number, Third Person.

In the third sentence the Verb *are going* is of the Plural Number, First Person, because its subject *we* is of the Plural Number, First Person.

Exercise 44.

Give the Number and Person of each Verb.

I am very unhappy. Nathan said unto David, 'Thou art the man.' Tom is wanted. We had a holiday. Thou hast thy reward. You are to be promoted. The boys have gone home. Who hath sorrow? If thou wilt, thou canst make me clean. The sun is setting. I am sorry that you are ill. You have a long journey before you.

67. In the sentence

Thou with fresh hope the lover's heart does fill,

the Subject, *thou*, is of the Second Person, while the Verb, *does*, is of the Third Person. The Verb ought to be *dost*.

68. In the sentence

He don't [= do not] know his own mind,

the subject, *he*, is of the Singular Number, and the Verb, *do*, is of the Plural Number. The Verb ought to be *does*.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 12.

Exercise 45.

Correct the errors in the following sentences:—

You was in school yesterday.
Is you going for a walk?
I is a good baby.
That lazy boy don't mean to try.
The river don't run up hill.
Don't he run fast?
The child's hands is very cold.
There is nine hundred sheep grazing on the hill-side.
There is five pigs in the sty.
There's two or three of us coming to see you.
You was the very man I want to see.
The shears is lying on the ground.
Was you at the concert last night?
Your brothers has been in the park.
Thou sees it is not so.
Three months' salary are now due to him.
Dogs is very faithful to their masters.
They sells in the dearest market and buys in the cheapest.
Within the cell stands two cloaked figures.
'Stop her' was Amyas's first words.
Almost every hour brings him within sight of some scene which have these marks set upon it.
On the table was two long pipes.

69. In the sentence

The pyramids of Egypt has stood more than three thousand years

the simple Subject, *pyramids*, is Plural; the Verb, therefore, ought to be Plural also (*have stood*). *Egypt* is in the Objective Case after the Preposition *of*.

70. In the sentence

A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye

the simple Subject, *variety*, is Singular; the Verb, therefore, ought to be Singular also (*charms*).

Exercise 46.

Correct the mistakes in the following sentences:—

The beauty of the flowers delight him.
The commission of crimes harden his heart.
A change in his plans were needed.
The pangs of conscience interrupts his pleasure.
Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits please some people.
The days of man is but as grass.
Too great a variety of studies tend to distract the attention
A change of studies are now and then desirable.
A knowledge of languages are often very useful.
The merit of the men were well known.
The art of making clocks were not then discovered.
A pension of five hundred pounds were granted.
The number of soldiers were very great.
The quality of the apples were good.
The dropping of cumbrous words are a real gain.
The enormous expense of governments have provoked men to think.
The usual number of burials were from twelve to seventeen.
The danger of seditions have been talked of.
Not a line of the lectures were written.
The appearance of many things remind me of the Dutch and Flemish pictures.
Nothing but dreary dykes occur to break the blank.
A sojourn of five years have strengthened these opinions.
The translation of specimens are very well done.

71. When the Subject consists of Singular Nouns or Pronouns connected by *and*, the Verb is Plural, as,

John and James *are* coming.
She and her brother *have* arrived.
He and she *were* late.

Exercise 47.

Correct the mistakes.

Socrates and Plato was two great philosophers.
Tomkins and he goes together.
Life and death is in the power of the king.

Idleness and ignorance is the parents of many vices.
Diligence and perseverance deserves prosperity.
From the same parliament comes a good act and a bad act.
Two and two makes four.
Peace and quiet flourishes where justice and reason rules.
Perhaps greatness of mind and beauty of soul is a gift of nature.
Exactly opposite each other stands a church and a gin-palace.
Near the fire was the table and the chair.
There was considerable noise and confusion.
Why is the scraping of fiddles and the twanging of harps allowed?

72. When the Subject consists of Singular Nouns or Pronouns connected by *or*, *either—or*, or *neither—nor*, the Verb must be Singular; as,

My father or my brother *is* coming to meet me.
Either the master or the servant *was* present.
Neither difficulty nor danger *frightens* him.

Exercise 48.

Correct the mistakes.

Neither precept nor punishment act like example.
Either the boy or the girl were present.
Man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch which move merely as they are moved.
Neither his pity nor his thankfulness were active.
Ignorance or negligence have been the cause of his ruin.
When difficulty or sorrow come to us we find out who are our friends.
There were neither honesty nor decency in his conduct.
Neither he nor I were pleased.
Neither he nor his brother are coming.
Haste or folly are his faults.
Our happiness or our misery are largely due to our own actions.
Neither Holland nor France are rich in minerals.
Neither the thought nor the accomplishment were of the world.
Neither he nor Addison were intended to be kings of men.
Neither his conduct nor his language have left me with that impression.

73. When the Noun or Pronoun which forms the simple Subject is joined to another Noun or Pronoun by such words or phrases as *with*, *together with*, *in addition to*, or *as well as*, the Verb agrees with the simple Subject only.

We say

The house *and* the furniture are worth a thousand pounds,

but

The house *with* the furniture *is* worth a thousand pounds;

that is

The house is worth a thousand pounds with the furniture.

So,

The cat and the dog *are* white,

but

The cat as well as the dog *is* white;

that is

The cat is white as well as the dog [is white].

Exercise 49.

Correct the mistakes.

The corn with the sacks weigh a ton.
Godliness with contentment are great gain.
The lion as well as the tiger eat flesh.
The captain with his men catch slaves.
The squire with his hounds kill a fox.
The house with the goods were burnt.
The man with all his faults were loved.
The electric light with powerful reflectors are to be employed.
The frequency of imposture together with the inefficacy of present arrangements serve as an excuse.
My sympathy with him in addition to my admiration for him were the beginning of our friendship.
The control as well as the support of a father were wanting.
Policy as well as fashion dictate such conduct.

74. The Noun qualified by *each* or *every* is Singular, and the Verb of which it is the Subject must be Singular also; as,

Every good boy was rewarded.
Each lesson is to be studied.

Exercise 50.

Correct the mistakes.

Each of the soldiers were armed.
Each of these causes tend to improve him.
That night every man of the crew were down with fever.
Every one of the audience have admired him.
Everybody living near him were Catholics.
Every plan for helping the poor were sure of his help.
Every line of his poems were like thumps on the anvil.
Every strong and weak point were carefully noted.
Every one of the letters bear date after his banishment.
Each of them receive the benefits to which they are entitled.
Every person are bound by the laws of their country.
Neither of those men seem to have any idea of honesty.
Are either of these men your friend?

Case after 'To Be.'

75. The Verb *to be* has the same Case after it as before it, as,

Thou art he.
I took it to be him.

In the first sentence *thou* is in the Nominative Case before *art*, therefore *he* is in the Nominative Case.

In the second sentence *it* is in the Objective Case governed by the Active Verb *took*. *It* before the Verb *to be* is in the Objective Case, therefore *him* is also Objective.

Exercise 51.

Correct the mistakes.

It was me who wrote the letter.
Art thou him that should come?
I do not doubt that it is him.
I do not doubt it to be he.
It was them who gave us all the trouble.
I would not do that if I were him.
She is so like her sister that I took it to be she.
That could not be her.
Was it me that said so?

I am certain that it was not him.
It was either him or his brother that won the first prize.
Whom do men say that he is?

Pronouns.

76. When you are speaking of yourself and others, good grammar and good manners alike require that you should name yourself last; as,

Fred, Tom and I are going for a walk.
My father sent presents to my sister and me.

77. The sentence

Me and William had a game at marbles

is doubly wrong. *William* ought to come first, and *me*, being Subject to *had*, ought to be in the Nominative Case (*I*).

Exercise 52.

Correct the mistakes.

Me and my brother live in a village.
Her and her sister are coming to see me.
Me and Brown are going fishing to-morrow.
I and you have been sent for.
Him and his father are engaged in the same business.
Her and three other girls are skipping.
Us and our friends have been promised a treat.
Them and those who helped them will get into trouble.

78. The sentence

Who is that for?

is wrong, as will be seen by changing the order—

That is for who?

For, being a Preposition, requires the Objective Case (*whom*).

Exercise 53.

Correct the mistakes.

Who did that book come from?
Who is the present meant for?

Who are you going to meet?
Who are you going to make captain?
Who can this letter be from?
Who are you going to apply to next?

79. The Relative Pronoun *what* is never used with an antecedent. Such a sentence as

That is the book what I want

is therefore wrong.

Exercise 54.

Correct the mistakes.

The boy drove away the birds what were eating the corn.
The man what came last night left this morning.
This is the rat what eat the malt.
The machine what was broken has been mended.
The dog fetched the birds what its master had shot.
Is this a dagger what I see before me?
The gardener what we employ is honest.
He loved the bird what loved the man, what shot him with his bow.

Pronouns after 'Than' and 'As.'

80. The greater part of the clause after *than* or *as* is generally 'understood,' as

I am younger than he [is young].
She loves him as well as I [love him].
She loves him as well as [she loves] me.

81. Mistakes sometimes arise from forgetfulness of this rule. No one would say

She is stronger than me am,
I am as old as her am;

and yet some persons say

She is stronger than me,
I am as old as her.

Exercise 55.

Correct the mistakes.

John writes better than me.
He is as good as her.

You will lose much more than me by the failure of the bank.
I suffer more than her.
They know how to write as well as him.
They are better scholars than us.
She is not so learned as them.
Who betrayed the secret? Not me.
Who is to be promoted? Neither him nor her.
Who did you meet? He.
Who did you meet in the park? He and his sister.
We shall soon be as poor as them.

'LIE' AND 'LAY.'

82. Be careful that you do not confound the Intransitive Verb *lie* with the Transitive Verb *lay*. The chief parts of the Verbs are—

Present	*Past*	*Perfect Participle*	*Imperfect Participle*
lie	lay	lain	lying
lay	laid	laid	laying

83. The Verbs are correctly used in the following sentences:—

The cat lies on the rug.
The baby is lying in the cradle.
I was tired, so I lay down to rest.
He has lain in the grave two years.
I am laying the books on the table.
Tom laid the boards on the ground.
I have laid the case before my father.

Exercise 56.

Correct the mistakes.

I am tired, so I shall lay down.
I am going to lay on the bed.
I was tired, so I laid down.
The slain are laying on the field of battle.
They have laid there for six hours now.
Let us lay under this tree.
The baby has laid there for a long time.
The rock has laid here for many years.
There let him lay.
The leopard shall lay down with the kid.

PARTICIPLES.

84. Be careful that you do not use the Past Tense for the Perfect Participle, or the Perfect Participle for the Past Tense.

Exercise 57.

Correct the mistakes.

I done all my lessons.
Who done that?
He done all his exercises correctly.
The labourer done his work early.
I come to school early last week.
My sister give me a present yesterday.
Who give that book to you?
The children have forgot their books.
The window was broke by a stone.
The horse has drank a great deal of water.
I have began to learn French.
I see you in the park last night.
He see me as I was crossing the street.
The boy has wrote his copy.
I would have wrote a letter.
The coachman had mistook the road.
English is spoke in many parts of the world.
The trees were shook by the wind.
The pony was stole from the field.
The river is now froze over.
Mary has chose the better part.
The price of corn has rose lately.
He would have went with us had he been invited.
The hare run across the field.
I have bore the baby in my arms.
John has beat his brother.
The dog has ate its dinner.
She has sang a pretty song.
Who has rang the bell?
The poor girl was drove to despair.
I had fell and hurt my leg.

Two Negatives.

85. When two negatives occur in the same sentence, one destroys the force of the other; thus,

I will *not* send you *no* help

means

I will send you some help.

86. If, therefore, a sentence is intended to be negative, it must contain only one negative word or phrase.

Exercise 58.

Correct the mistakes.

I cannot by no means allow it.
I cannot drink no more.
He cannot do nothing.
The house is without no furniture.
Haven't none of you fellows seen nothing of no hat of mine?
Nothing never affected her so much.
The baker has not no bread left.
I will not do that, neither now nor at any future time.
There can be no rules laid down, nor no manner recommended.
He will not by no means do what you ask.
No change of fortune never disturbed him.

Miscellaneous.

87. There is no such word as *aint*.
88. Do not say *this here* or *that there*.
89. Do not say *them* for *those*.
90. Do not say *don't* for *doesn't* or *does not*.
91. Do not say *did not ought* for *ought not*.
92. Do not say *between you and I* for *between you and me*.

Exercise 59.

Correct the mistakes.

I aint heard from home for a long time.
Aint you tired after your hard work?
The boy aint the best in the school.
Those aint the books which I wanted to see.
Tom aint begun to do his home lessons.
This here book is very interesting.
That there house belongs to my uncle.
Them trees are loaded with fruit.
I fancy that them men are waiting for me.
The knife aint no good now because it is broke.
He don't care what you say.
Don't she mean to come?
Boys did not ought to tease their sisters.
You did not ought to be late.
Between you and I he is a dunce.
That matter rests between you and I.

Exercise 60.

[On pars. 66–92.]

Mr. Brown has took his children to church.
The Thames has overflown its banks.
Who is that knocking? Me.
We have found the sheep what we lost.
That is him.
I am not so strong as him.
Who are you thinking about?
The horse is laying down in the stable.
It is not me you mean.
The dog laid down and went to sleep on the mat.
There is enough here for you and I.
I see Jack last week; he give me a kite.
Each of these houses are too small for us.
The baby is laying asleep in the cradle.
Who should I meet the other day but my old friend.
I cannot tell who to compare them to.
Ycu was angry with me for nothing.
Thou wert in the wrong.

Don't he want any help?
He don't try to do his lessons.
That aint the right answer to that question.
She don't mean to work to-day.
Aint that a beautiful picture?
There is a horse and a cow in the paddock.
There stands Tom and his brother.
The good temper of the children charm me.
Jack and Jill is going up the hill.
Each of the workmen are worthy of their wages.
I thought it was him.
I understood it to be he.
Me and Tom Brown are going fishing.
Him and me was playing at marbles.
Between you and I, I do not trust him.
I suffer more from the quarrel than him.
This here dog is not so fierce as that there one.
Will you pass me some of them plums?
Jack didn't ought to tease his little sister.
You should not think that you are without no hope.
Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits delight some people.
A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye.
A degree of awkwardness and dignity were blended.
Has the goods been sold?
There is many occasions in life in which silence and simplicity is true wisdom.
True dignity with softness of manners were happily blended in him.
The support of so many of his relations were a tax upon his industry.
Not one of them whom thou sees clothed in purple and fine linen are perfectly happy.
The fame of this man and of his actions were noised abroad.
Thou should love thy neighbour as sincerely as thou loves thyself.
Idleness and ignorance is the parent of many vices.
Time and tide waits for no man.
Patience and diligence, like faith, removes mountains.
This book, together with the next two, are very interesting.
The religion of these people, as well as their customs, were clearly described.
One and nineteen makes twenty.
One added to nineteen make twenty.
We find out our friends when want or difficulty come to us.
He and they we know.
She that is idle and mischievous, reprove sharply.
He invited my brother and I to see his library.

Will you take Mary and me for a row?
The boy brought some fruit for my sister and I.
May me and Amelia go for a walk?
He who committed the offence I will punish.
Whatever others do let thou and I act wisely.
Let them and we unite to bring about this result.
By sailing on so stormy a day he run a great risk.
He soon begun to weary of having nothing to do.
As he was hot with running he drunk eagerly.
Who brought these flowers? Me.
The run would not have harmed him if he had not fell.
He would have went with us had he been asked.
The police found the man who had stole the goods.
They have chose the best books in the shop.
The window was broke yesterday.
He had mistook his interests and found himself forsook by all his friends.
No new danger has arose.
He has not yet wore off his rough manners.
He writes as the best authors would have wrote had they writ on the same subject.
Neither riches nor honour nor no such blessings satisfied him.
Be truthful nor take no thought of falsehood.
We did not nor do not mistrust him.
I am resolved not to give in neither now nor in future.
We cannot by no means permit you to go.
I have received no letter neither from Tom nor his friend.
You have as many chances of getting on as them.
In the matter of books they are better off than us.
They are greater gainers than me by the business.
Though she is not so clever as him she is more loved.
He writes better than her, but she reads better than him.
Who betrayed us? Not me.
There is but one in fault and that is me.
May I as well as thee be meek and patient.
A string of such sentences are disagreeable.
Thou never didst them wrong nor no man wrong.
If this be him we mean let him beware.
Many a Frenchman are to be found in London.
Was you there or was it him?
James and him didn't ought to have said so.
Who did you expect to have seen here?
Either James or John had great cause for complaint.
He don't mind what I say.
Mind who you are speaking to.

As neither John nor Thomas are going let you or I go.
Every member of our families have been away.
He didn't ought to have broke the window.
I aint laughing at nobody and I don't take you for nothing.
Neither the character nor the conduct of Miss Fitzjones are imaginary.
So says the Richmond magistrates.
The examination is to be conducted in the same manner as the examination of class subjects are now.

LONGMANS'
SCHOOL COMPOSITION.
SENIOR.

ON THE CHOICE OF WORDS.

Ignorance.

93. Never use a word unless you know the exact meaning of it.[1]

It is not enough to have a general notion of the meaning; it is not enough to remember a sentence in which you have seen the word used, for you may have mistaken the sense, or the writer himself may have mistaken it.

94. Sheridan, in his play 'The Rivals,' makes Mrs. Malaprop frequently employ words which are wrong but which resemble the right words in sound. She says, for example:—

Sure, if I reprehend [apprehend] anything in this world, it is the use of my oracular [vernacular] tongue and a nice derangement [arrangement] of epitaphs [epithets].—*The Rivals*, act iii., sc. 3.

Exercise 61.

In the following sentences the words printed in italics are wrongly used by Mrs. Malaprop; substitute the right words.

You will promise to forget this fellow, to *illiterate* him, I say, from your memory.

[1] The Bishop of Oxford having sent round to the churchwardens in his diocese a circular of inquiries, among which was, 'Does your officiating clergyman preach the Gospel, and is his conversation and carriage consistent therewith?' the churchwarden of —— replied, 'He preaches the Gospel, but does not keep a carriage.' In this case the writer of the circular knew the meaning of the word *carriage*, but the reader did not.

Now don't attempt to *extirpate* yourself from the matter. I would by no means wish a daughter of mine to be a *progeny* of learning; . . . she should have a *supercilious* knowledge of accounts &c. . . . I would have her instructed in *geometry* that she might know something of the *contagious* countries.

Your being Sir Anthony's son, Captain, would itself be a sufficient *accommodation*, but from the *ingenuity* of your appearance I am convinced that you deserve the character here given of you.

I thought she had *persisted* from corresponding with him, but . . . this very day I have intercepted another letter from the fellow.

She's as headstrong as an *allegory* on the banks of the Nile.

Caparisons don't become a young woman.

I am sorry to say . . . that my *affluence* over my niece is very small.

Tell us what's the matter. . . . He can tell you the *perpendiculars*.

You have no more feeling than one of the Derbyshire *putrefactions*.

Lead the way and we'll *precede*

He will *dissolve* my mystery..

Pardon my *camelion* blushes.

95. Mistakes so gross as Mrs. Malaprop's are not often made, but smaller mistakes are unfortunately common. Here are some examples: [1]

(1) I was never taught to write, and consequently I belong to the innumerable class whose *caligraphy* is without form and comeliness.

Caligraphy (from the Greek καλός—*kalos*, beautiful, and γράφειν—*graphein*, to write) means beautiful writing, and beautiful writing cannot be 'without form and comeliness.'

(2) If there should be another election and I exhibit colours, am I to receive this damage with *impunity*?

Impunity (from the Latin *impunitas*, from *im* = *in*, not, and *poena*, punishment) means freedom from punishment, and no punishment is due to the man who receives the damage. Impunity was enjoyed by the man who did the damage.

(3) The fish had attained the *immense* length of one and a half yards.

Immense (from the Latin *im* = *in*, not, and *mensus*, p.p. of *metiri*, to measure) means immeasurable; and the fish was not immeasurable, because its measure is actually given.

(4) The career of the criminal had *culminated* in the lowest depths of degradation.

Culminate (from the p.p. of the Latin *culmin-are*, to come to a top) means to reach the highest point; and the career of the criminal could not, therefore, culminate in the lowest depths.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 13.

(5) As I was passing down the street I *witnessed* an accident.

Witness means to bear testimony; the speaker did not witness the accident—he only saw it.

(6) He *informed* me of what I already knew.

Impossible; *inform* means to instruct, to impart knowledge to; he *told* me what I already knew.

(7) The books were *literally* shovelled into the schools.

The speaker meant that the books were supplied profusely; he did not mean that they were thrown in with a shovel. His statement was, therefore, not literally true—that is, it was not true to the letter (Latin *litera*). It might be *literally* true that fuel was shovelled in.

(8) Deceased had *partaken* of three ounces of laudanum.

Partake means to share. There had been no sharing of the laudanum—the man had taken the whole of it himself.

(9) Kate is a very *nice* girl. She made us a very *nice* pudding.

Nice,[1] as used by careful writers, means accurate in judgment to minute exactness, delicate, fastidious, refined. Is it too late to protest against its being used loosely for *agreeable*?

It is now applied to a sermon, to a jam tart, to a young man—in short, to everything.—KINGTON OLIPHANT, *Sources of Standard English*, p. 244.

'But now, really, do you not think "Udolpho" the nicest book in the world?'

'The nicest; by which, I suppose, you mean the neatest. That must depend upon the binding.'

'Henry,' said Miss Tilney, 'you are very impertinent. Miss Morland, he is treating you exactly as he does his sister. He is for ever finding fault with me for some incorrectness of language, and now he is taking the same liberty with you. The word *nicest* as you used it did not suit him, and you had better change it as soon as you can, or we shall be overpowered with Johnson and Blair all the rest of the way.'

'I am sure,' cried Catherine, 'I did not mean to say anything wrong; but it *is* a nice book, and why should not I call it so?'

'Very true,' said Henry, 'and this is a very nice day; and we are taking

[1] Lord Beaconsfield makes one of his characters (Mendez Pinto) say: 'English is an expressive language, but not difficult to master. Its range is limited. It consists, so far as I can observe, of four words, *nice*, *jolly*, *charming*, and *love*, and some grammarians add *fond*.'

a very nice walk; and you are two very nice young ladies. Oh! it is a very nice word indeed; it does for everything. Originally, perhaps, it was applied only to express neatness, propriety, delicacy, or refinement: people were nice in their dress, in their sentiments, or their choice; but now every commendation on every subject is comprised in that one word.'

'While in fact,' cried his sister, 'it ought only to be applied to you without any commendation at all. You are more nice than wise. Come, Miss Morland, let us leave him to meditate over our faults in the utmost propriety of diction, while we praise "Udolpho" in whatever terms we like best.'—JANE AUSTEN, *Northanger Abbey*, ch. xiv.

(10) He gave us a *lot* [a great deal] of trouble.
The boy lost *a lot of* [a great many] marbles.

The meaning assigned to *lot* in these sentences is probably a perversion of the meaning that auctioneers give the word—the portion of goods sold at once.

(11) The prisoner said that he beat her because she *aggravated* [annoyed] him.

Aggravate (from the Latin *ag-grav-are*, to add to the weight, from *ag* = *ad*, to, and *gravis*, heavy) means to make heavier, to make worse; it does not mean to irritate, vex, or annoy.

(12) He deserves some *condign* punishment.

Condign (from the Latin *con*, and *dignus*, worthy) means deserved, not severe.

(13) My field of turnips was absolutely *decimated*: scarce a root was left untouched.

Decimate is a military term, meaning to select every *tenth* (Latin *decimus*) man for punishment; the farmer would have used it correctly if only a tenth of his turnips had been injured.

(14) At Lawrence, where 35,000 girls are employed in the mills, I saw thousands of them at their looms, but could scarcely realise that this was their daily and hourly *avocation*.

In this sentence *avocation* is confounded with *vocation*. A man's *vocation* (from the Latin *voc-are*, to call) is his calling, business, occupation; his *avocation* (from *a* = *ab*, from, and *voc-are*) is that which calls him off from his vocation, distracts, diverts, or interrupts him. Both words are correctly used in the following sentences:—

Heaven is his *vocation*, and therefore he counts earthly employments *avocations*, except in such cases which lie, as I may say, in the marches of

divinity and have connection with his calling.—FULLER, *Traits of a Good Bishop*.

Let your authorship be a pastime, not a trade; let it be your *avocation*, not your *vocation*.—F. JACOX, *Aspects of Authorship*.

(15) We have a *mutual* friend in Mr. Jones.

Mutual means reciprocal, each acting in return or correspondence to the other. If A loves B and B loves A, the feeling is *mutual*; if both A and B have a friend C, he is their *common*, not their *mutual* friend. In the following sentences *common* and *mutual* are correctly used:—

He pointed out two of our *common* friends in the room.
Our correspondence was forthwith renewed with the most hearty expressions of *mutual* good-will.

The word *mutual* is incorrectly used in the following sentences:—

Probably nothing draws us closer together than *mutual* ill-health.
To their *mutual* astonishment they saw a pen move itself into an erect position.

(16) The information was quite *reliable*.

Careful writers dislike *reliable*, and most of them deny it the right to exist. Mr. FitzEdward Hall, however, who has written a volume 'On English Adjectives in *-able*,' contends that the word is lawful, though he admits that he himself has used it only once. *Trustworthy* serves every purpose that can be served by *reliable*, and is quite free from objection.

For choice and pith of language he belongs to a better age than ours and might rub shoulders with Fuller and Browne, though he does use the abominable word *reliable*.—J. R. LOWELL *on Emerson*.

(17) He is a very *talented* man.

The word *talented* is condemned by all nice critics.

I regret to see the vile and barbarous vocable *talented* stealing out of the newspapers into the leading reviews and most respectable publications of the day. Why not *shillinged*, *farthinged*, *tenpenced*, &c.? The formation of a Participle Passive [or Perfect Participle] from a Noun is a licence that nothing but a very peculiar felicity can justify. If mere convenience is to justify such attempts upon the idiom you cannot stop till the language becomes, in the proper sense of the word, corrupt.—COLERIDGE, *Table Talk*.

In the drawing-room I had a long talk with Lady Holland about the antiquities of the house, and about the purity of the English language, wherein she thinks herself a critic. I happened, in speaking about the Reform Bill, to say that I wished that it had been possible to form a few

commercial constituencies, if the word constituency were admissible. 'I am glad you put that in,' said her ladyship. 'I was just going to give it you; it is an odious word. Then there is *talented*, *influential*, and *gentlemanly*. I never could break Sheridan of *gentlemanly*, though he allowed it to be wrong.' We talked about the word *talents* and its history. I said that it had first appeared in theological writing, that it was a metaphor taken from the parable in the New Testament, and that it had gradually passed from the vocabulary of divinity into common use. I challenged her to find it in any classical writer on general subjects before the Restoration, or even before the year 1700. I believe that I might safely have gone down later. She seemed surprised by this theory, never having, so far as I could judge, heard of that parable of the talents. I did not tell her, though I might have done so, that a person who professes to be a critic in the delicacies of the English language ought to have the Bible at his finger ends.—MACAULAY (*from a Letter to his Sister given in Trevelyan's Life*).

(18) The lad was sent with a *verbal* message to the doctor.

Verbal means couched in words—spoken or written. The lad was sent with an *oral* message—that is, a message by word of mouth.

Exercise 62.

The following sentences are open to objection. Re-write them, using other words for the words printed in italics.

A visible and attractive *presentiment* of the saint is indispensable.

How do you do? *Nicely*, thank you.

Nice little boots for *nice* little feet.

The boy wasted a *lot* of time.

I received your kind *invite*, and would be happy to accept but that I am *stopping* away from home.

Some speeches *aggravated* him more than he could bear.

Her father had entered on the routine of his *avocations*.

A life wholly devoted to duty is very easily diverted from ambition, and his life was entirely taken up by his professional *avocations*.

Brodie made a scrawl on paper only to be equalled by the *caligraphy* of Elliotson.

Practical joking deserves *condign* punishment.

It is not every painter that is *calculated* to show to such advantage.

A *capacious* rent had been made in his coat.

He was saved from *condign* and most deserved punishment.

Incompetent writers *retire* to the background all the smaller words of *forcible Saxon origin*.

The warders have to be watchful to detect the *secretion* of tobacco and notes in the food sent in to the prisoners.

The Jews were always very careful in the *observation* of the religious festivals.

After a journey of a week's *endurance* he arrived home.

The author is distinguished by *property* in the use of words.

The messenger brought news of great *import*.

I knew that he was there, but I had no *conscience* of his presence.

> Though learned, well bred; and, though well bred, sincere;
> Modestly bold and *humanly* severe.

He was learned in all the *ceremonious* rites of the Church.

He *demeaned* himself before his superiors.

A fop is a *risible* character.

Man is a *ridiculous* [laughing] animal.

Dr. Dodd is a very *populous* preacher.

The path is the *centre* of the garden.

She parts her hair in the *centre*.

The title of sage bestowed upon him by his scholars was *due* more to their ignorance than his knowledge.

The *negligence* of this leaves us exposed to an uncommon levity in our conversation.

The calamities of the children were *due* to the *neglect* of their parents.

The fly in its *infantine* state lies all the winter enclosed in a ball.

They manifested great *candidness* throughout the transaction.

The importance as well as the *authenticalness* of the books has been displayed.

His natural severity rendered him a very *impopular* speaker.

A row of cottages fell, but the *inmates* were all out.

She hoped that the dames of the Primrose League would never be *confused* in the minds of her hearers with those ladies who . . .

The attempt, however laudable, was found to be *impracticable*.

He is our *mutual* benefactor.

Vivacity is often promoted by presenting to the mind a sensible object instead of an *intelligible* one.

The river broke through its banks and the country was *overflown*.

The *proposition* for each of us to relinquish something was accepted, and led to a cordial *reconcilement*.

Mr. Matthews will never resign till he is *literally* kicked out.

This paste will *adhere* labels to tin.

All the *sophism* which has been employed cannot obscure so plain a truth.

He was so ill that he could not *set* up at all, but had to *lay* in bed.

He died *with* violence, for he was killed *by* a sword.

He had no *less* than seventy houses.

Mr. Jones *learns* us geography.

He spent some time in trying to *retrieve* the names of the towns through which he had passed.

The *most ancient* treatise on this subject by a modern was the work of a Frenchman.

The cavalry were *extenuated* by the fatigues of the voyage.

Pope *glorified* in being the friend of princes.

In the matter of paper-hangings they would be *literally* at sea but for the suggestions of the ingenious gentleman on the other side of the counter.

Fried fish cooking is abolished for ever *and anon* in Eden Street.

Greatly against his will he was *fain* to go.

Please *appreciate* the poor afflicted artist if you think him worthy.

How much more ludicrous will the *minion of the law* appear *equipped* as a patent dog-proof policeman in indiarubber armour *dight*.

Every page *radiates with an atmosphere of abandoned crime.*

Maximum results obtained with *minimum* ease.

I suppose she had the usual *complement* of teeth.

Exercise 63.

(a) *Distinguish between:—*

Lie and *lay*; *rise* and *raise*; *loose* and *lose*; *sit* and *set*; *deprecate* and *depreciate*; *effect* and *affect*; *proscribe* and *prescribe*; *composure* and *composition*; *disposition* and *disposal*; *emerge* and *immerge*; *emigrant* and *immigrant*; *eminent* and *imminent*; *exposure* and *exposition*; *complement* and *compliment*; *ingenious* and *ingenuous*; *observance* and *observation*; *predict* and *predicate*; *presumptive* and *presumptuous*; *principal* and *principle*; *preposition*, *proposition*, and *proposal*; *perspicuity* and *perspicacity*; *respectable* and *respectful*; *repellent* and *repulsive*; *confound* and *confuse*; *statue* and *statute*; *habit* and *habitation*; *spirited*, *sprightly*, *spirituous*, and *inspired*; *corporal* and *corporeal*.

(b) *Make sentences containing these words.*

Etymology.

96. Examination of the faulty sentences given on the pages immediately preceding will show that a knowledge of the etymology of words is a great help to the proper use of them.

97. Besides being a help to correct writing, a knowledge of etymology is also a help to intelligent reading, for the best authors ever bear in mind the origin of the words that they use. A few illustrations may be given from Milton.

(1) Thither let us tend
From off the tossing of these fiery waves;
There rest (if any rest can harbour there);
And reassembling our *afflicted* powers
Consult.—*Paradise Lost*, I., 183–7.

Afflicted (from the Latin *afflictus*, p.p. of *affligere*, to strike to the ground) is peculiarly well applied to the angels,

Hurled flaming, headlong from the ethereal sky.

(2) But wherefore let we then our faithful friends . . .
Lie thus *astonished*?—*Paradise Lost*, I., 264–6.

Astonished (from the Anglo-Saxon *á-stunian*, to stun completely) is similarly well applied.

(3) Samson, contrasting his conduct with that of 'Israel's governors,' says (*Samson Agonistes*, 246–7):—

I, on th' other side,
Used no *ambition* to commend my deeds;

that is, he went not about to commend them, *ambition* being from the Latin *amb-itio* (from *amb-ire*), a going about, used especially of going about to solicit votes.

(4) . . . . The gulf
Of Tartarus, which ready opens wide
His fiery *chaos* to receive their fall.
Paradise Lost, VI., 53–5.

The Greek word χάος (chaos), allied to χαίνειν, to gape, means a cleft.

Exercise 64.

Give the etymology of the words printed in italics, and show how their use accords well with it.

On each wing
Uriel and Raphael his vaunting foe,
Though huge and in a rock of *diamond* armed,
Vanquished.—*Paradise Lost*, VI., 362–5.

Underfoot the violet,
Crocus and hyacinth, with rich inlay
Broidered the ground, more coloured than with stone
Of costliest *emblem*.—*Id.*, IV., 700–3.

Nor wonder if by fire
Of sooty coal the *empiric* alchimist
Can turn or holds it possible to turn
Metals of drossiest ore to perfect gold.
Paradise Lost, V., 439–42.

Nor aught availed him now
To have built in heav'n high towers, nor did he scape
By all his *engines*.—*Id.*, I., 748–50.

Daughter of God and man, immortal Eve,
For such thou art, from sin and blame *entire* . . .
Id., IX., 291–2.

Matter to me of glory, whom their hate
Illustrates, when they see all regal power
Giv'n me to quell their pride.—*Id.*, V., 738–40.

With goddess-like demeanour forth she went
Not unattended, for on her as queen
A *pomp* of winning Graces waited still.—*Id.*, VIII., 59–61.

Elephants *endorsed* with towers
Of archers.—*Paradise Regained*, III., 329–30.

Before the starry threshold of Jove's court
My *mansion* is.—*Comus*, 1–2.

Though her body die her fame survives,
A *secular* bird, ages of lives.—*Samson Agonistes*, 1710–11.

98. Though the etymology of a word ought always to be kept in mind, words should not be used in their original meaning when the present meaning has diverged from it.

(1) *Insolent*, for example (from the Latin *in*, not, and *solens*, pr.p. of *sol-ere*, to be accustomed), originally meant unusual, extraordinary; yet we could not now say that a man standing on his head was behaving insolently.

(2) *Prevent* (from the Latin *pre*, before, and *ventus*, p.p. of *ven-ire*, to come) originally meant to come before, to anticipate; yet its use in that sense in the following sentence is pedantic :—

The prefect Vitalianus had signalised his fidelity to Maximin by the alacrity with which he obeyed, and even *prevented* the cruel mandates of the tyrant.—GIBBON, *Decline and Fall*, ch. vii.

Exercise 65.

Find the etymological meaning of the words printed in italics, and substitute other words for them.

Preserve to our use the *kindly* fruits of the earth.

Richard calculated by murdering his nephews to make himself accounted a *kindly* king.

Let him live in some honest vocation, and therein bestow himself faithfully and *painfully*.

Thou *preventest* him with the blessings of goodness.

And it came to pass after these things that God did *tempt* Abraham.

Neither is it to be *admired* that Henry should be pleased to have the greatest wit of those times in his interests.

In man there is nothing *admirable* but his ignorance and weakness.

In these cases open contestation is not faction or schism, but due Christian *animosity*.

The knaves rolled down two huge stones, whereof the one smote the king upon the head, the other *astonished* his shoulder.

Aristark mine even [my fellow] *caitiff* greeteth you well.

Take each man's *censure* but reserve thy judgment.

We may use the same liberty in our English versions out of Hebrew or Greek for the *copy* or store that he hath given us.

Thy daughter is dead; why *diseasest* thou the Master any further?

I find Sir Walter Raleigh's vein most lofty, *insolent*, and passionate.

The curates are often so *lewd* [ignorant] that they understand not the books of Latin.

Miscreants in scorn have upbraided us that the highest of our wisdom is 'Believe.'

AMBIGUITY.

99. Avoid ambiguity.

100. Some words have several meanings.

'How various are the senses in which *post* is used; as *post*-office, *post* haste, a *post* standing in the ground, a military *post*, an official *post*, to *post* a ledger. . . . In what an almost infinite number of senses *stock* is employed; we have live-*stock*, *stock*-in-trade, or on the farm, the village *stocks*, the *stock* of a gun, the *stock* dove, the *stocks* on which ships are built, the *stock* which goes round the neck, the family *stock*, the *stocks* or public funds in which money is invested, with other *stocks* besides these.'—TRENCH, *On the Study of Words*.

101. When a word has more than one meaning, be sure that you make clear which meaning you intend to employ.

(1) A respectable widow *wants* washing

may mean that she needs to be washed or that she desires to wash clothes.

(2) The colonel ordered his servant to go to the *post*

may mean that the man was sent to the post-office, to some particular post stuck in the ground, or to some military position.

(3) The gamekeeper looked at his *stock*

may mean that he looked at his live-stock or at the stock of his gun.

(4) The Vision of Piers the Plowman

may mean the vision seen by Piers; it does mean the vision concerning him.

Exercise 66.

Alter the following sentences so that there shall be no ambiguity about the words printed in italics. [*Each sentence has two possible meanings.*]

The lady is vain of her *carriage.*

Her patience when conversation was going on *about* her was remarkable.

Why need I sing of *jars*?

Think of the children [in the Arctic regions] born to *blubber.*

I've met with many a breeze before, but never such a *blow.*

She was doomed to have a *winding sheet of water.*

He is one of the *oldest* inmates.

A man who has lost his eyesight has in one *sense* less consciousness than he had before.

And *seeing* a dream is caused by . . . .

His *presence* was against him.

I *remarked* the circumstance.

The schoolmaster is *abroad.*

Have you seen Brown's *last* book?[1]

The *appearance* of gout can never be considered a good omen.

The school was placed in its present *position* a century ago.

The farthing is considered by some as affording a *certain* clue to the identity of the murderer.

He spoke *before* the judges.

The *denouncing of the* League was unpopular.

[1] One of Brown's enemies replied, 'I hope so.'

I bought the book *for* Annie.

The night was still very dark *but only* when the flashes of lightning came.

My sweetheart *when a boy.*

We were at one and the same time travelling on our road and sitting down to a repast of fish with which the greatest table in London can scarce at any *rate* be supplied.

An *electrical trades union meeting.*

102. Do not in any sentence employ the same word in more than one sense.

The sentence

As he had inherited *certain* property from his uncle, his income was *certain*

would be better written

As he had inherited certain [*or* some] property from his uncle, his income was sure [*or* assured, *or* safe].

103. A comic effect is sometimes obtained, as in the following example, by disregard of the rule just given:—

Then reading on his 'bacco box
He heaved a bitter sigh,
And then began to *eye his pipe,*
And then to *pipe his eye.*

104. Many words (such as *rich* and *poor*, *darkness* and *light*) go in pairs, and a comic effect is sometimes obtained when one word is and the other is not employed in the sense which it has in the pair. Examples abound in the writings of Hood.

(1) Ben Battle was a soldier bold,
And used to war's alarms;
But a cannon-ball took off his legs,
So he laid down his arms.

Faithless Nelly Gray.

Legs being used for members of the body, we are surprised to find that *arms* is not used in the same way.

(2) So in the following lines from the same poem:—

Now, as they bore him off the field,
Said he, 'Let others shoot,
For here I leave my second leg
And the Forty-second Foot.'

(3) In the lines (from 'The Epping Hunt'),

> But Huggins, like a wary man,
> Was ne'er from saddle cast,
> Resolved by going very slow
> On sitting very fast,

slow refers to the rate of motion, and a comic surprise is caused by making *fast* refer to something else.

Exercise 67.

Re-write the following sentences, expressing in other words one (or both) of the meanings of the words printed in italics:—

Gregory *favoured* the undertaking because the manager in countenance *favoured* his friend.

He turned to the *left* of the house and then he *left* abruptly.

He *means* to take advice as to the best *means* of succeeding.

In this *case* the noun is in the Nominative *case*.

She always *leaves* the *leaves* of her book dirty.

The *present* satisfies me at *present*.

I do not *like* to see a boy write *like* that.

A man of his *sense* should have a higher *sense* of duty.

Mr. Jones came every day; *every other* man came *every other* day.

105. Nouns formed from some Transitive Verbs may be used in an active sense or in a passive sense. Make clear the sense in which you use such Nouns.[1]

Do not, for example, say

I was greatly interested in reading of the discovery of Livingstone,

as this may mean

I was greatly interested in reading of the discovery of Livingstone by Stanley,

or

I was greatly interested in reading of some discovery made by Livingstone.

[1] The rule to be observed in these cases may be put clearly in the terms of Latin grammar. The Genitive is said to be *objective* when, if a verbal construction were used, the Genitive would become an Accusative; as, *the love of money* (which would become *loving money*). The Genitive is said to be *subjective* when with a verbal construction we should have the Nominative; as, *the love of a mother for her children* (which would become *the love that a mother has*, &c.). When the Genitive may be understood either subjectively or objectively, avoid the genitive construction.

Exercise 68.

Re-write the following sentences so that there shall be no ambiguity in their meaning:—

These events occurred a little after *the Reformation of Luther*.

When our friendship is considered, how is it possible that I should not grieve *for his loss*?

Imprudent associations disqualify us for the *instruction or reproof of others*.

What lesson do you learn from *the rebuke of Peter*?

There seemed to be no end to the *chiding of her husband*.

Everybody approved of *the choice of the member*.

We must condemn *the forsaking of the parents*.

How did you like the *shaving of the barber*?

The *shooting of the colonel* caused great indignation.

The *punishment of the master* was thought too severe.

Nor was the actual efficiency of this immense army inferior to *its* imaginative terrors.

Penetrated to his inmost heart with sympathy for the poor, he has been mistaken for an advocate of *their* high-handed oppression.

Steam factories of all descriptions have sprung up by the dozen, where *their* very suggestion was formerly considered an offence.

Synonyms.[1]

106. 'Properly defined, synonyms are words of the same language and the same grammatical class, identical in meaning; or, more generally, synonyms are words of the same language which are the precise equivalents of each other.'—Marsh.

107. Perhaps there are, strictly speaking, no synonyms in the English language. Even when words have the same meaning they are distinguished in use.

'For example, we have *globe* from the Latin, *sphere* from the Greek. The one is fairly translated by the other, and they are identical in signification, inasmuch as all that can be truly affirmed of the one is true also of the other; but they differ in use, and therefore we cannot always employ them interchangeably, *sphere* belonging rather to scientific and poetical, *globe* to popular, language.'—Marsh.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 14.

108. As popularly used, the term synonyms is applied to words which are *similar* in meaning, not to words which are *identical*, to 'words which are more or less liable to confusion, but which yet ought not to be confounded.'[1]

109. In composition it is highly necessary to distinguish between synonyms.

It is as necessary to distinguish between shades of meaning as between shades of colour. Pines, oaks, and grass, for example, are all green, but the painter represents them by different pigments; similarly, boldness, bravery, valour, fortitude, prowess, daring, and pluck are all forms of courage, but the writer represents them by different words.

110. A few examples will show the importance of studying synonyms.

(1) *Custom, Habit.*

By *custom* we mean the frequent repetition of the same act; by *habit* the effect which that repetition produces on the mind or body. The *custom* of drinking may lead to the *habit* of drunkenness; the *custom* of going to a place of worship may lead to the *habit* of piety. *Custom* applies to the many, *habit* to the one; every nation has peculiar *customs*, every person has peculiar *habits*.

(2) *Enough, Sufficient.*

He has *enough* whose desires are satisfied; he has *sufficient* whose needs are supplied. A miser, therefore, may have *sufficient* though he never has *enough*.

(3) *Pride, Vanity, Conceit.*

Pride may relate to any object, high or low; *vanity* relates only to petty things. *Pride*, therefore, may be good or bad; *vanity* is always bad. A man may be *proud* of his wealth, his learning, or his power; he may be *vain* of his person, his dress, or his walk. A man may be too *proud* to be *vain*; he may be too *proud* to do a mean act or too *vain* to do a good deed at which his friends would laugh. *Conceit* relates to one's talents only. One may be *proud* of abilities which he really possesses; he is *conceited* over abilities which he does not possess—which exist only in his *conceit* or fancy.

(4) *Arrogance, Presumption.*

A king may show *arrogance* in claiming the service of his ministers; the mob may show *presumption* in attempting to control them. *Arrogance* is demanding in an offensive fashion what you may, perhaps, have a right to require; *presumption* is demanding what you have no right to require—at any rate, now. *Arrogance* is coupled with haughtiness, *presumption* with meanness.

[1] Trench.

(5) *Invent, Discover.*

We *discover* a thing which is already in existence; we *invent* something new. We *invent* a telescope and *discover* a star. We *invent* a theory and *discover* a truth.

(6) *Boldness, Bravery, Valour, Fortitude, Prowess, Daring, Pluck.*

These are all different forms of courage. *Boldness* is not uncommon, and the possession of it, therefore, calls for no special admiration. *Bravery* and *valour* are less common and more admired. *Bravery* is rather of the body, *courage* of the mind. A man is *brave* by constitution, *valiant* by reason and reflection. *Fortitude* is the courage shown in suffering patiently. *Prowess* is a somewhat poetical word and is applied especially to deeds; *pluck* implies high spirit, and *daring* is not far short of rashness.

Exercise 69.

(a) *Fill each blank with one of the synonyms indicated.*

Custom, Habit.

It is the . . . of the Mahometans if they see any printed or written paper upon the ground to pick it up.

A loose and careless life brings a man into . . .s of dissipation.

It was formerly the . . . to dance round a maypole.

It has been said that man is a bundle of . . .

Sufficient, Enough.

Some who have . . . for themselves, never think whether others have . . . for their needs.

I can easily procure . . . for my own wants, but to provide . . . for the maintenance of a large family is not so easy.

Pride, Vanity, Conceit.

. . . makes men ridiculous, and . . . makes them odious.

'Tis an old maxim in the schools,
That . . . 's the food of fools.

The self . . . of the young is the great source of the dangers to which they are exposed.

The man's . . . made him the laughing-stock of the village.

Arrogance, Presumption.

The . . . of the prince caused the subjects to rebel.
The . . . of the subjects caused the prince to exert his authority.
In 'Paradise Lost' Satan is made to show . . . to the Almighty but not . . . to his followers.

Invent, Discover.

Columbus . . .ed America.
Watt improved the steam-engine so much that he may almost claim to have . . .ed it.
The Chinese claim to have . . .ed gunpowder, and to have . . .ed the properties of the magnetic needle.

Boldness, Bravery, Valour, Fortitude, Prowess, Daring, Pluck.

True . . ., friends, on virtue founded strong, meets all events alike.
Discretion is the better part of . . .
The soldier showed the . . . of the lion.
The wounded man gave proof of great . . .
The history of Wallace affords many examples of . . .
Deeds of . . . are not always to be admired.
None but the . . . deserve the fair.

(b) *Distinguish between the meanings of*

Counsel, admonish, *and* exhort.
Play, pastime, game, *and* sport.
Miserly, stingy, *and* niggardly.
Rivalry *and* emulation.
Deride, jeer, *and* scoff.
Accomplish *and* achieve.
Growth, development, *and* evolution.
Companion, comrade, *and* associate.
Sympathy, compassion, *and* pity.
Skirmish, contest, *and* battle.
Injury, harm, damage, *and* detriment.
Leisure, idleness, indolence, laziness, *and* sloth.

(c) *Make sentences containing the words given in* (b).

(d) *Substitute better words for the words printed in italics in the following sentences :—*

The train was wrecked through the engine-driver's *fault* of vision.
The resolution was passed without *reform* or debate.

He proposed the study of Italian as an occupation for my *idleness*.
The *sentence* of the jury and the *verdict* of the judge were approved.
The counsel tried to *confound* the witness.
He *glared* wistfully at the fruit.
The good man is not overcome by disappointment when that which is mortal *passes away*, when that which is mutable *dies*, and when that which is transient *begins to change*.
We may be taught to *mend* what is erroneous.
We have *enlarged* our family and expenses and *increased* our garden and orchard.
A hermit is *rigorous* in his life, a judge *austere* in his sentences.
Galileo *discovered* the telescope; Harvey *invented* the circulation of the blood.

(e) *Fill each blank with one of the synonyms*[1] *indicated.*

Casual, Accidental, Fortuitous.

The world was held by Epicurus to be a . . . concourse of atoms.
In the course of conversation he let fall a . . . remark which had no connection with the subject.
He is suffering from lameness from the effect of an . . . hurt.

Perilous, Dangerous, Hazardous.

The minister has made a . . . experiment; in ordering an insufficient force to attack the enemy he has obliged the general to undertake a . . . enterprise. The attack was made, but one of the chief commanders received a . . . wound.

Revenge, Vengeance, Retribution, Retaliation.

On taking the city . . . was executed on the rebel sepoys, some of whom had murdered their officers out of . . . for some fancied slight received. The carelessness of some of those in power has met with a terrible . . .

Strong, Powerful, Vigorous, Forcible, Potent, Strenuous.

Opium is a . . . drug and has been known to undermine a very . . . constitution. It is only by a . . . effort that a man, once accustomed to the use of it, can break himself of the habit. If some speaker of intellect would make . . . exertions to bring the evil of the trade in it before the public mind and make a . . . attack on it in the House, it might be hoped he would succeed at this juncture in putting a stop to it.
The character of this man inspires the reader with . . . contempt. He seems to have been incapable of any . . . feeling or affection.

[1] From Whately's *English Synonyms*, p. 207.

Simplicity.

111. The shortest and simplest words in our language are generally native English.

The following passage from Shakespeare contains 171 words, but only two of them are of foreign origin:—

This shoe, with the hole in, is my mother, and this my father. A vengeance on't! there 'tis: now, sir, this staff is my sister; for, look you, she is as white as a lily and as small as a wand: this hat is Nan, our maid: I am the dog:—no, the dog is himself, and I am the dog,—O the dog is me, and I am myself: ay, so, so. Now come I to my father; 'Father your blessing;' now should not the shoe speak a word for weeping: now should I kiss my father; well, he weeps on. Now come I to my mother; O, that she could speak now! like a wood woman! Well, I kiss her; why, there 'tis; here's my mother's breath up and down. Now come I to my sister; mark the moan she makes. Now the dog all this while sheds not a tear nor speaks a word; but see how I lay the dust with my tears.—Shakespeare, *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, act ii., sc. 3.

112. In stately prose (as in the following passages from Milton and Burke) we find a far larger proportion of words derived from Greek or Latin.

It happened once . . . to be a great and solemn debate in the court of Darius, what thing was to be counted strongest of all other. He that could resolve this, in reward of his excellent wisdom, should be clad in purple, drink in gold, sleep on a bed of gold, and sit next Darius. None but they, doubtless, who were reputed wise had the question propounded to them; who, after some respite given them by the king to consider, in full assembly of all his lords and gravest counsellors, returned severally what they thought. The first held that wine was strongest; another, that the king was strongest; but Zorobabel, prince of the captive Jews, and heir to the crown of Judah, being one of them, proved women to be stronger than the king. . . . Yet he proved on, and it was so yielded by the king himself and all his sages, that neither wine, nor women, nor the king, but truth, of all other things, was the strongest.

For me, though neither asked, nor in a nation that gives such rewards to wisdom, I shall pronounce my sentence somewhat different from Zorobabel; and shall defend that either truth and justice are all one (for truth is but justice in our knowledge, and justice is but truth in our practice); and he indeed so explains himself, in saying that with truth is no accepting of persons, which is the property of justice, or else, if there be any odds, that justice, though not stronger than truth, yet by her office is to put forth and exhibit more strength in the affairs of mankind. For truth is properly no more than contemplation, and her utmost efficiency is but teaching; but justice in her very essence is all strength and activity; and hath a sword put into her hand, to use against all violence and oppression on the earth. She it is most truly who accepts no person, and exempts none from the severity of her stroke. She never suffers injury to prevail, but when falsehood first prevails over truth; and that also is a kind of justice done on them who are so deluded. Though wicked kings and tyrants counterfeit her sword, as some did that buckler fabled to fall from heaven into the Capitol, yet she communicates her power to none but such as, like herself, are just, or at least will do justice. For it were extreme partiality and injustice, the flat denial and overthrow of herself, to put her own authentic sword into the hand of an unjust and wicked man, or so far to accept and exalt one mortal person above his equals, that he alone shall have the punishing of all other men transgressing, and not receive like punishment from men when he himself shall be found the highest transgressor.—Milton, *Eikonoklastes*, ch. xxviii.

My hold of the colonies is in the close affection which grows from common names, from kindred blood, from similar privileges, and equal protection. These are ties which, though light as air, are as strong as links of iron. Let the colonies always keep the idea of their civil rights associated with your government; they will cling and grapple to you; and no force under heaven will be of power to tear them from their allegiance. But let it be once understood that your government may be one thing and their privileges another; that these two things may exist without any mutual relation; the cement is gone—the cohesion is loosened—and everything hastens to decay and dissolution. As long as you have the wisdom to keep the sovereign authority of this country as the sanctuary of liberty, the sacred temple consecrated to our common faith, wherever the chosen race and sons of England worship freedom they will turn their faces towards you. The more they multiply, the more friends you will have; the more ardently they love liberty, the more perfect will be their obedience. Slavery they can have anywhere. It is a weed that grows in every soil. They may have it from Spain, they may have it from Prussia; but until you become lost to all feeling of your true interest and your natural dignity, freedom they can have from none but you. This is the commodity of price, of which you have the monopoly. This is the true act of navigation, which binds you to the commerce of the world. Deny them this participation of freedom, and you break that sole bond which originally made, and must still preserve, the unity of the empire. Do not entertain so weak an imagination, as that your registers and your bonds, your affidavits and your sufferances, your coquets and your clearances, are what form the great securities of your commerce. Do not dream that your letters of office, and your

instructions, and your suspending clauses are the things that hold together the great contexture of this mysterious whole. These things do not make your government. Dead instruments, passive tools as they are, it is the spirit of the English communion that gives all their life and efficacy to them. It is the spirit of the English constitution which, infused through the mighty mass, pervades, feeds, unites, invigorates, vivifies every part of the empire, even down to the minutest member.—BURKE, *Speech on Conciliation with America* (1775).

113. When you can write like Milton or Burke you may use as many words of foreign origin as you please; till then use, as far as possible, the short and simple words of your mother-tongue.[1]

114. In the following sentence a burlesque effect is obtained by the use of long words.

The authority, sir, of all these great men . . . deposes, with irrefragable refutation, against your ratiocinative speculations, wherein you seem desirous, by the futile process of analytical dialectics, to subvert the pyramidal structure of synthetically deduced opinions, which have withstood the secular revolutions of physiological disquisition, and which I maintain to be transcendentally self-evident, categorically certain, and syllogistically demonstrable.—PEACOCK, *Headlong Hall.*

115. A similar effect is obtained by the transformation of

Twinkle, twinkle, little star!
How I wonder what you are!
Up above the world so high,
Like a diamond in the sky

into

Shine with irregular, intermitted light, sparkle at intervals, diminutive, luminous, heavenly body!

How I conjecture, with surprise, not unmixed with uncertainty, what you are!

Located, apparently, at such a remote distance from, and at a height so vastly superior to, this earth, the planet we inhabit,

Similar in general appearance and refractory powers to the precious primitive octahedron crystal of pure carbon, set in the aërial region surrounding the earth.

[1] When you doubt between two words choose the plainest, the commonest, the most idiomatic. Eschew fine words as you would rouge; love simple ones as you would native roses on your cheeks.—*Guesses at Truth.*

116. The written prose of Dr. Johnson, though sometimes stately and often full of weighty matter, would have been more forcible had it contained a smaller proportion of Latin words.

In a letter from the Highlands he says:—

When we were taken upstairs a dirty fellow bounced out of the bed on which one of us was to lie.

In a book that he wrote about his journey he describes the same incident thus:—

Out of one of the beds on which we were to repose started up at our entrance a man black as a Cyclops from the forge.

Johnson's spoken prose was generally simple and strong. Now and then, indeed, it seemed to him too plain, and he would translate a sentence from English into Johnsonese. Speaking, for example, of 'The Rehearsal,' he said, 'It has not wit enough to keep it sweet'; then, after a pause, he added, 'It has not vitality enough to preserve it from putrefaction.'

117. Many, also, of the poets of the last century thought it vulgar to use the language of everyday life when writing of the persons and things of everyday life. One, for example, called boars 'monsters of the bristly drove,' and another, who wanted to say that a peasant tucked up his coat and ran out of doors, wrote:—

His vest succint then girding round his waist,
Forth rushed the swain in hospitable haste.[1]

118. While you should, as far as possible, use native English words, still, if in any case a word of foreign origin best expresses your meaning, it would be ridiculous affectation to use any other.

'The . . . Anglo-Saxon or old English pedantry which attempts to expel long-established Latin words to make room for Teutonic ghosts is no better [than the classical pedantry now beginning to go out of fashion]. It results in such barbarisms as *fore-words* for *preface* [*betterness over* for *superiority to*], *a try* for *an attempt*, *name-word* for *Noun*, *for-name* for *Pronoun*, *link-word* for *Conjunction*, *but-word* for *adversative*, "the anonymous *remarker*," . . . "sweet and *matterful* verse," . . . *regrettable*, *usable*, *double*, . . . *the un-go-through-*

[1] For an excellent essay on the language of poetry, see the Preface to Wordsworth's *Lyrical Ballads.*

some-ness of stuff for *the impenetrability of matter*.'—NICHOL, *English Composition*, p. 38.

119. Worse than the fault of using a long word for a short one, worse than the affectation of using a new-made English word for an established Latin one, is the practice of employing vulgar circumlocutions. Dislike of simplicity is a mark of bad taste—a mark often seen in ill-conducted newspapers.

120. The writers for such newspapers seem to think it witty and clever not to call a thing by its right name; so they call a *drunkard* a *disciple of Bacchus* or *a man in a state of vinous excitement*; one's *wife* becomes *his better half* or *his rib*; *women* are the *fair sex*,[1] &c.

121. 'Our journals seem, indeed, determined to banish our common Saxon[2] words altogether. You never read in them of a *man*, or a *woman*, or a *child*. A man is an *individual*, or a *person*, or a *party*; a woman is a *female*, or, if unmarried, a *young person*, which expression, in the newspapers, is always of the Feminine Gender; a child is a *juvenile*, and children *en masse* are expressed by that most odious term, *the rising generation*. As to the former words, it is certainly curious enough that the same debasing of our language should choose, in order to avoid the good honest Saxon *man*, two words, *individual* and *party*, one of which expresses a man's *unity*, and the other, in its common untechnical use, belongs to man *associated*. And why should a *woman* be degraded from her position as a rational being, and be expressed by a word which might belong to any animal tribe, and which in our version of the Bible is never used except of animals, or of the abstract, the sex in general? Why not call a man a *male* if a woman is to be a *female*?—ALFORD, *The Queen's English*, § 497.

122. 'The newspaper writers never allow us to *go* anywhere—we always *proceed*. A man going home is set down as "an individual *proceeding* to his *residence*."

123. 'We never *eat*, but always *partake*, even though we happen to eat up the whole of the thing mentioned. In court, counsel asks a witness, "Did you have anything to eat there?" "Yes." "What was it?" "A bun." Now go to the report in the paper, and you'll be sure to find that "witness confessed to having *partaken* of a bun," as if some one else shared it with him.

[1] Addison often, in the *Spectator*, calls women the *fair sex*. Swift, writing to Stella, says scornfully, 'I will not meddle with the *Spectator*. Let him *fair sex* it to the world's end.'

[2] *English* (or even *Anglo-Saxon*) is a better term than *Saxon*.

124. 'We never hear of a *place*—it is a *locality*. Nothing is ever *placed*, but always *located*. "Most of the people of the place" would be a terrible vulgarism to these gentlemen—it must be "the majority of the residents in the locality."

125. 'Then no one lives in *rooms*, but always in *apartments*. *Good lodgings* would be far too meagre; so we have *eligible apartments*. Besides being a vulgarity, this is also an impropriety. An *apartment* is, properly, not one room, but a set of rooms: the portion of the house which is set apart for one occupant, or family of occupants. In foreign towns, this is the English use of the word still, as it is the uniform foreign use.'—ALFORD, *The Queen's English*, §§ 501–504.

126. Vulgarity similar to that condemned by Dean Alford is often seen in trade announcements. A certain butcher calls himself *purveyor of meat to her Majesty*; a cat's-meat man calls himself *a purveyor of food for domestic animals*; a barber calls himself *a tonsorial artist and facial operator*; while a washerwoman calls herself a *lady launderer*, and adds that she *operates* a mangle.

Exercise 70.

Re-write the following sentences, substituting for the words printed in italics other words, simpler or in better taste:—

Fashionable ladies and *juveniles* with pet *canines* should avoid the park at present.

There was a fine *pyrotechnic display*.

Mr. Snip is a *professor of the sartorial art*.

He has not been here a *sufficient length of time*.

Smoking is *prohibited*.

A city *situate* upon a mountain must be *conspicuous*.

The blessings of thy father have prevailed above the blessings of my *progenitors*.

There are *celestial* bodies and bodies *terrestrial*.

The *nuptial ceremony was celebrated* this morning.

Mr. Jones of Crundale is an *eminent agriculturist*.

Come to see me *at the earliest opportunity*.

Pope took great pains with his *epistolary correspondence*.

The man pays great attention to *the hirsute appendages of his face*.

Every class wore clothes of a cut and colour distinctly prescribed for it by stern *habilimentary* laws.

Among the *weaker sex* we frequently see courage which might put the *lords of creation* to the blush.

A baker sells the *staff of life*.

We treated ourselves to a dozen of *the succulent bivalve*.

He and his brother both *indulge in the noxious weed*, and both *sacrifice to Bacchus*.

We *partook of the cup that cheers but not inebriates*.

Not a few of the *impecunious inhabitants* of Battersea are to-day wailing in sackcloth and ashes.

The squire was followed by *numerous canines*.

At *this present writing* it is *difficult* to say how things will *ultimately eventuate*.

They were persons of recognised authority in questions of *habilimental* taste.

The faults of half-culture are as *innumerable* as the *numerous* careers and lots in life which cause a *lop-sided* development of man's powers.

In a moment *the edifice was enveloped in shooting tongues of flame: the catastrophe has plunged the whole street into the gloom of night*.

Beyond these are blue undulations of varying tone, and then another *bosky-looking spot* which constitutes the *residential umbrage* of another peer.

A *lot* of time was wasted in *endeavouring* to reach her *mental senses*, which are become very *obfuscated* through dissipation.

As this *irascible embodiment of senile and impotent* officiousness evidently *desiderates* enlightenment, I will answer his *strictures seriatim*.

Afterwards they *went in* for *Terpsichorean exercises* and *tripped it on the light fantastic* till the '*wee sma' hours ayont the twal*.'

At last the door opened and Miss Smith *put in an appearance*.

He *had expended a considerable sum* in *erecting a residence*.

The *deceased* was distinguished by the excellence of his *post-prandial deliverances*.

There were several old *disciples of Izaak Walton*, with several *juvenile votaries of the piscatorial art*.

At the *commencement he proceeded with deliberation*, but towards the *conclusion* he put forth all his speed and *eventually arrived* in time.

He was caught in the act of *osculation*.

The proper time to make hay is while *the bright orb of day hangs resplendent in the blue vault of heaven*.

The *infantile portion of the community* felt great interest in her shop.

She was *interred* in Kensal Green.

The *initial* number of a new review lies before us.

The accused was *condemned to enjoy the hospitality of the State* for six months.

The *pedestrian contest terminated* in the defeat of Robinson.

The water escaped through small *perforations*.

She had but one eye, her other *ocular organ* having been knocked out.

The cat was lying in the sunny window taking her *matutinal* nap.

The *young gentlemen* of Mr. Smith's *collegiate institution commence their vacation* on the 24th.

You shouldn't give vent to vociferations till you have emerged from the forest.

'What's in a name?' asks Juliet, powerfully affected by the thought that that which we *appellate* a rose by any other *cognomen* would *possess the property of titillating the olfactory in an equally dulcet manner*. Much is in a name. The Quaker *individual* understood its power when he threatened the *canine quadruped* with *condign visitation*.

We lean rather to the ancient proverb [*In vino veritas*], that truth is *made manifest on convivial occasions*.

The *juvenile portion of the community*, especially *the male progeny of human kind*, are sometimes mischievous.

This reminds us of an ill-natured proverb about *the speedy separation that arises between certain classes of men and their available resources*.

His *male parent* and his *avuncular relation* were both of opinion that modern fiction furnishes no *intellectual nutrition whatever to the adolescent mind*.

Many a flower is burdened with *preposterous appellatives*.

The exercise of cutaneous ablution is essential to health.

The man has an *ebriated aspect*.

The month of April is favourable to the *development of the species of creation which is noxious to vegetation*.

How *teeming* every *gem of Flora* with *perfume*!

My *male parent* being taken from me, I engaged in private *tuition*.

Lovers of the nicotian weed will welcome these cigars.

The prince *was attired in a mourning habit*.

One *individual* may *pilfer a quadruped* where another may not *cast his eyes* over the *boundary of a field*.

In the absence of the feline race the mice *give themselves up to various pastimes*.

Feathered bipeds of advanced age are not to be *entrapped with the outer husks of corn*.

More confectioners than are absolutely necessary are apt to ruin the pottage.

He is *an unfortunate individual suffering from aberration of intellect*.

Will you do us the favour *of making our rural retreat your temporary abode*?

The *guardian of the flock* was on the downs with his *canine assistant*.

In the course of a walk along Fleet Street we meet *literary gentlemen*, *agricultural gentlemen*, *commercial gentlemen*, *gentlemen of the long robe*, and *gentlemen engaged in mercantile pursuits*.

Anything like *hirsute luxuriance* about the *sacerdotal physiognomy* is offensive to every *orthodox admirer of the via media*.

No stone or inscription marks the *location of their interment.*

What *adult pedestrian* has not heard this request from a very small child carrying a milk can or a beer jug but unable from *exiguity of stature* to reach the topmost *tintinnabulum*?

Adolescens! art thou *endeavouring to entice a member of the finny tribe* to *engulf into his denticulated mouth* the barbed hook at whose point is *affixed* a *dainty allurement*?[1]

Slang.

127. Avoid all slang.

128. Persons who use slang take an apparently meaningless word, like *bamboozle*, and invest it with arbitrary meaning, or they take a perfectly proper word, like *awful*, and give it meanings of which it is innocent. The habit at best is a stupid one. It implies laziness or ignorance, and a disregard for the dignity and truth of language. It is inconsistent with clear thinking. It lowers the mental standard, and in time may even lower the moral standard of those who employ it.

Exercise 71.

Re-write the following sentences in good English:—

The flower is *awfully* pretty; the roads are *awfully* dusty; the day is *awfully* fine, and we have had an *awfully jolly spree.*

His professions are all *bosh.*

We spent a very *jolly* week at the seaside.

The *governor* came in and caught us larking.

We are *awfully* glad to see you.

The draper offered his goods *at a low figure.*

How do you feel?—Pretty *peckish*; and how do you?—Oh! *A* 1.

You cannot *bamboozle* him; he *is up to snuff.*

I gave the best answer I could, but I was *awfully sat upon.*

It is true that he hit the mark, but it was *only a fluke.*

That fellow has *bamboozled* us again.

He is very *uppish*, as you may see by his *phiz.*

I asked him what he *was up to.*

She was *very much cut up* by the news.

The Mayor *gave* the Alderman *the cold shoulder.*

[1] The small boy answered, 'No sir; I'm fishing.'

We are going to have a *jolly lark* as *the pater* and *the mater* are both out.

He varies his literary work by *running* about the biggest [*that is*, one of the biggest] market-garden in England. [The slang use of *running* and the careless use of *about* make it appear that the author ran about his garden.]

Old Words and New Words.

129. A living language, like every other living thing, is continually undergoing a double process of decay and growth. Old words are ever dropping out of use and new words are coined or borrowed. **Avoid obsolete words.** They may exceed in beauty or expressiveness the words that have taken their places; but you write to be understood, and how can you expect to make your meaning clear if you employ terms intelligible now only to students of our older authors? Even if the terms are understood, they harmonise as little with your style as trunk-hose would with a dress-coat of the present day. **Avoid new words also,** unless they express new ideas; and **do not attempt to coin terms.** Our mother-tongue has proved sufficient to convey greater thoughts than ours, and if we search long enough we cannot fail to find in it all the words we need.

130. Some writers of the Tudor and the Stuart periods are a standing caution against the use of new words. They introduced many Greek and Latin terms that refused to take root and now stand dead in the midst of the living. Thus:—

(1) 'The terrible term, predestination, which hath troubled so many weak heads to conceive, and the wisest to explain, is in respect to God no *prescious* [fore-knowing] determination of our estates to come but a definitive blast of His will already fulfilled and at the instant that He first decreed it.'—Sir Thomas Browne, *Religio Medici*, § 2.

(2) 'When they separate from others, they knit but loosely among themselves, nor contented with a general breach or *dichotomy* [division] with their church do subdivide and mince themselves almost into atoms.'—*Id.* § 8.

(3) 'There is no danger to *profound* [fathom] these mysteries.'—*Id.* § 13.

(4) 'Some are without *efficient* [beginning], as God.'—*Id.* § 14.

(5) 'This *cryptic* [hidden] and involved method of His providence have I ever admired.'—*Id.* § 17.

(6) 'I may give only this advice according to my small *model* [capacity].' Bacon's *Essays; Of Unity in Religion.*

(7) 'It beginneth with the mixed *adeption* [acquisition] of a crown by arms and title.'—Bacon, *Of the Advancement of Learning*, Bk. I., ii., 8.

(8) 'The alchemists . . . inculcate that Vulcan is a second nature, and imitateth that dexterously and compendiously which nature worketh by *ambages* [circuitous ways] and length of time.'—*Id.* Bk. II., vii., 1.

(9) 'He knoweth the nature of *arefaction* [drying].'—*Id.* Bk. II., viii., 8.

(10) 'We may see what *celsitude* [loftiness] of honour Plinius Secundus attributeth to Trajan in his funeral oration.'—*Id.* Bk. II., xxii., 15.

131. A brief examination of almost any poem will show that the diction of poetry differs in many respects from that of prose. Let us take, for example, Tennyson's 'Lotos-Eaters.' Confining our attention to the choice of words and grammatical forms, we find the following lines which would not occur in prose :—

Rolling a *slumbrous* sheet of foam below.

Up-*clomb* the shadowy pine above the woven copse.

The charmëd sunset lingered low *adown* in the west.

They *sat them* down upon the yellow sand.

Laden with flower and fruit *whereof* they gave
To each, but *whoso* did receive them . . .

Music that *gentlier* on the spirit lies
Than tired eyelids upon tired eyes.

And turning yellow
Falls, and floats *adown* the air.

To watch the *crisping* ripples on the beach.

To watch the long bright river drawing slowly
His waters from the purple hill.

Only to hear *were* sweet.

132. The fact that a word may with propriety be used by a poet of the present day does not necessarily warrant its use by a prose writer; because

(i.) Some words still used in poetry are obsolete in prose, and

(ii.) Many words (such as *ire*, *woe*, *dole*, *dire*, *direful*, *blissful*, *baleful*, *thrall*) are by common consent deemed too 'poetical' for ordinary prose.

133. In writing prose, **poetical words should be avoided.**

134. Like new and coined words, **strange words should be avoided.**

If you have nothing to say, why write? If you have something to say, why not say it in words that your reader will understand?

Exercise 72.

Re-write the following sentences, substituting other words for those printed in italics :—

Mr. Brown *donated* a hundred dollars.

The English language of the future will need all the *mental acuity* of the English people of the future.

As far as we have been able to test them, the answers are *dependable*.

A double set is provided, which may be *interchangeable* at the teacher's pleasure.

An explanatory *introductory* thoroughly understood will pave the way.

The squire said that he hunted his dogs *parallelogrammatically*.

This is the day on which those charming little missives *ycleped* valentines cross and intercross each other at every street.

The *ire* of the goddess was unappeasable.

He who *erst* was king now kept a school.

His *whilom* friends had all deserted him.

Peradventure there may be fifty.

He came hither by the king's *behest*.

It grieveth me to see him misbehave.

'And then,' *quoth* he, 'you may return.'

I *wist* not where he dwelt.

It *irks* me to see so perverse a disposition.

I *wot* not who has done this thing.

Homicide and *verbicide* are alike forbidden.

Nothing but an *oscitancy* from which no writer is exempted can account for so odd a misapplication of a familiar term.

A friendly discussion which his wife *ultroniously* embarked upon . . .

The jovial and *eupeptic* vicar in a very *nonchalant* manner confessed the crime.

They don't *frivol* over speculative points of *abstrusive* philosophy.

They have grown quite *rampageous*.

The poetical aspects of engineering on which he *enthused* were new to his audience.

The prisoner *attempted to suicide*.

He is a *comical* [κόμη—the hair of the head] artist.

She carries the historic proud countenance of the Geraldines of her day—aristocratic, *matrician*, and fixed.

He was left during the moment *as* followed *quasily* [Lat. *quasi*, as if] dumb.

The shells, however, at length ceased to *displode*.

The whole system of registration is *clamant* for reform.

He *ultroniously* and illegally took to beating the boys.

He is an example of *cupeptic* good nature and common sense.

Foreign Words.

135. More to be avoided than old, new, or strange words are foreign words. It is not likely that you can have anything to say which may not be said in your mother-tongue. Some writers seem (like Holofernes in the play) to 'have been at a great feast of languages and stolen the scraps.'[1] They possibly wish to show their learning; what they often do show is (as in the following examples) their lack of it.

(1) She does not forget her *protege* [who was a little girl].

There are two mistakes in this sentence. There is no such word as *protege*, and *protégé* is Masculine. The correct French word is *protégée*.

[1] A class of writers has sprung up who appear to think it their special business to 'enrich' the language by dragging into it, without any attempt at assimilation, contributions from all the tongues of the earth. The result is a wretched piece of patchwork, which may have charms in the eyes of some people, but which is certainly an abomination in the eyes of the genuine student of language.

We need only glance into one of the periodical representatives of fashionable literature, or into a novel of the day, to see how serious this assault upon the purity of the English language has become. The chances are more than equal that we shall fall in with a writer who considers it a point of honour to choose all his most emphatic words from a French vocabulary, and who would think it a lamentable falling off in his style did he write half a dozen sentences without employing at least half that number of foreign words. His heroes are always marked by an *air distingué*; his vile men are sure to be *blasés*; his lady friends never merely dance or dress well, they dance or dress *a merveille*; and he himself when lolling on the sofa under the spirit of laziness does not simply enjoy his rest, he luxuriates in the *dolce far niente*, and wonders when he will manage to begin his *magnum opus*. And so he carries us through his story, running off into hackneyed French, Italian, or Latin expressions whenever he has anything to say which he thinks should be graphically or emphatically said. It really seems as if he thought the English language too meagre, or too commonplace a dress in which to clothe his thoughts. The tongue which gave a noble utterance to the thoughts of Shakespeare and Milton is altogether insufficient to express the more cosmopolitan ideas of Smith, or Tomkins, or Jenkins!

We have before us an article from the pen of a very clever writer, and, as it appears in a magazine which specially professes to represent the 'best society,' it may be taken as a good specimen of the style. It describes a dancing party, and we discover for the first time how much learning is necessary to describe a 'hop' properly. The reader is informed that all the people at the dance belong to the *beau monde*, as may be seen at a *coup d'œil*; . . . . and in fact everything about it bespeaks the *haut ton* of the whole affair. A lady who has been happy in her hairdresser is said to be *coiffée à ravir*. Then there is the bold man to describe. Having acquired the *savoir faire*, he is never afraid of making a *faux pas*, but no matter what kind of conversation is started plunges at once *in medias res*. Following him is the fair *débutante*, who is already on the look-out for *un bon parti*, but whose *nez retroussé* is a decided obstacle to her success. She is of course accompanied by mamma *en grande toilette* who, *entre nous*, looks rather *ridée* even in the gaslight. Then, lest the writer should seem frivolous, he suddenly abandons the description of the dances *vis-à-vis* and *dos-à-dos* to tell us that Homer becomes tiresome when he sings of *βοῶπις πότνια Ἥρη* twice in a page. The supper calls forth a corresponding amount of learning, and the writer concludes his article after having aired his Greek, his Latin, his French, and, in a subordinate way, his English.

Of course, this style has admirers and imitators. It is showy and pretentious, and everything that is showy and pretentious has admirers. The admixture of foreign phrases with our plain English produces a kind of Brummagem sparkle which people whose appreciation is limited to the superficial imagine to be brilliance. Those who are deficient in taste and art education not unfrequently prefer a dashing picture by young Daub to a glorious cartoon by Raphael. The bright colouring of the one far more than counterbalances the lovely but unobtrusive grace of the other. In a similar way, young students are attracted by the false glitter of the French-paste school of composition; and instead of forming their sentences upon the beautiful models of the great English masters, they twist them into all sorts of unnatural shapes for no other end than that they may introduce a few inappropriate French or Latin words, the use of which they have learned to think looks smart. Of course, penny-a-liners are amongst the most enthusiastic followers of the masters of this style. They not only think it brilliant, but they know it to be profitable, inasmuch as it adds considerably to their ability to say a great deal about nothing. The public sees a great deal in the newspapers about '*recherché* dinners' and 'sumptuous *déjeuners*' (sometimes eaten at night), and about the *éclat* with which a meeting attended by the '*élite* of the county' invariably passes off; but they get but a trifling specimen of the masses of similar rubbish which daily fall upon the unhappy editors. The consequence of all this is that the public is habituated to a vicious kind of slang utterly unworthy to be called a language. Even the best-educated people find it difficult to resist the contagion of fashion in such a thing as conversation; and if some kind of stand is not made against this invasion, pure English will soon only exist in the works of our dead authors.—*Leeds Mercury (quoted by Dean Alford).*

(2) Write to me, *mia carissima*, as soon as you get this.

Mia carissima (Italian for 'My dearest') is Feminine; but the sentence is taken from a letter written by a girl to her lover.

(3) The *hoi polloi* lined the tow-path.

Hoi (*οἱ*) is the Masculine Plural of the Greek Article; *polloi* (*πολλοί*) is the Plural of *polus* (*πολύς*), many. 'The *hoi polloi*,' therefore, means 'The the many.'

(4) Thus we see that there are many and various kinds of horses. There is the Flemish mare, the Arab steed, and last, but not least, the *hors de combat*, or French war-horse.

The boy who wrote this did not know that *hors de combat* (disabled) had nothing to do with horses.

(5) *Effluvia* and *memoranda* may sometimes be seen used as Singular, *stratas* may be seen as an English Plural, and *animalculæ*

and *effluviæ* as Latin Plurals of words already Plural; while *vivâ voce* has been made to rhyme to *dose*, *bonâ fide* to *pride*, *Goethe* to *teeth*, and *Cyclades* to *maids*; and an Englishwoman, who is a popular novelist, speaks of the hands of the *Scipii* being nailed to the *rostræ*!

(6) Ignorance of French is shown in the following sentences:—

And thus *naïve* [Fem.] he stood out in bold relief.

We must be very *naïve* [Fem. Sing.] to imagine that they sound our praises over the tomb of the Prophet.

Tom Moore was a dapper little man, so short as to look quite *petite* [Fem.]

He had small *petite* [Fem. Sing.] features. ['Small *petite*' means 'small small.']

These two fine paintings have, by some connoisseurs, been considered the *chef d'œuvres* of the series.

(7) The following sentences show ignorance of Latin:—

Of the other luminary I have named, I have not so much to say, in consequence of such *litera scripta* [Sing.] of his as have escaped being marked 'private.'

The journalistic *vertebræ* [Plur.] in Kingston is growing tougher.

(8) The following sentence shows ignorance of Greek:—

This is a *phenomena* [Plur.] common to an immense number of diseases.

Exercise 73.

Re-write the following sentences, using only English words:—

A propos of poets what do you think of Scott?

He spoke *à propos de bottes*.

The man is consumed with *amour propre*.

The *beaux esprits* of the age were too *blasé* to enjoy his plays.

The funeral *cortège* was a mile long.

Napoleon obtained power by a *coup d'état*.

They sat around the table, having before them the *débris* of the feast.

She made her *début* as a singer at Covent Garden.

The fair *débutante* was nervous when she first stepped on the stage.

He treated us to an elegant *déjeuner*.

The *élite* of the town were gathered in the hall.

Messrs. Smith and Jones gave their *employés* an excellent tea *à la fourchette*.

It is useless to oppose the measure now as it is a *fait accompli*.

The girl spoke with unusual *naïveté*.

We must begin our work again *ab initio*.

Ad valorem duties are charged at those ports.

Cæteris paribus, I should prefer a brown to a piebald pony.

Though he was not king *de facto*, his adherents claimed that he was king *de jure*.

His *quondam* friends now differ from him *in toto*, and he must begin *de novo* the task of creating a party.

When he had made his *ex parte* statement, the court adjourned *sine die*.

We cannot oppose his motion *per se*; indeed, the passing of it is a *sine qud non*.

Matters are now restored to their *ante quo bellum* condition.

Speaking *ex cathedrâ*, he stated *in limine* that he differed *in toto* from all his critics.

The queen travelled *incog*.

The gardens exhibited much that was glaring and *bizarre*.

I told the *garçon* to bring me some *café au lait*, but the stupid fellow brought me *café noir*.

There is now no *raison d'être* for their existence.

This subject is still on the *tapis*.

Her sister sank into a chair, frightfully *perdue*.

This *penchant* of his did anything but commend itself to his associates.

It may be fine fun for them, but the exchange of Billingsgate *badinage coram publico* by *embryonic M.P.'s* is not conducive to public *decorum*.

No one despises a handkerchief bordered with *duchesse* or *point de gaze* lace, and when a *mouchoir* . . .

Straw bonnets can be utilised by the addition of velvet or *frisé* borders, with trimming to match, an *aigrette* placed in a *coque* of velvet or *frisé*, with a velvet or *frisé mentonnière* in place of strings.

A *vêtement* is ornamented with an exceedingly rich beaded *passementerie motifs*.

A sensitive withdrawal and sudden retreat into the shell of silence but not of conviction is very much fostered by such *dyslogistic* remarks as 'Grandmotherly policy' . . . samples of a class in which the feminine elementary or *ewig weibliches* is used as a *ne plus ultra* of *inanity* or *imbecility*.

The *tout ensemble* and the *mise-en-scène* were all that could be desired.

Are you going to the *matinée*?

The play did not hit the popular taste; it had only a *succès d'estime*.

We went to Mrs. Jones's *soirée dansante*; we had *pâté de foie gras* and some delightful *chansons*, and on coming out I wore my *sortie de bal*.

We have here an *embarras des richesses*.

The *pièce de résistance* was a leg of mutton.

She fed *sans façon* on the *mangeaille* provided by the *chef* of the village *auberge*.

136. In addition to avoiding foreign words, you should **avoid** foreign idioms, as—'That goes without saying' (*Cela va sans dire*) for 'That is understood,' or 'Of course.'

137. You should also avoid using English words as the equivalents of their foreign representatives when the meanings of the words are not the same.

The French *assister* means 'to be present at.' Do not use the English *assist* as if it meant the same. Similarly, in French *practicable* means 'passable,' but not so in English.

Replace, to place back again, is often used as equivalent to the French *remplacer*, to take the place of.

The clock was *replaced* [placed back again] by a servant

is good English, but

The clock was *replaced* [had its place taken] by a vase

is English corrupted by French influence.

Our Indefinite *one* corresponds to the French Impersonal *on*, but cannot be used so freely. Such a sentence as the following is disagreeable:—

How miserable 'tis to have one one hates always about one, and when one cannot endure one's own reflection upon some action who could bear the thoughts of another upon him?

Exercise 74.

Re-write the following sentences, avoiding the foreign idioms:—

The meeting was a *pronounced* success [*prononcé*, decided].

All this was done by the persons I *intend* [*entendre*, to mean].

I am a man and cannot help feeling any sorrow that can *arrive at* [*arriver*, to happen] man.

The popular lords did not fail to *enlarge themselves* [*s'élargir*, to enlarge] on the subject.

This minister has the *courage of his convictions.*

They know not how to employ their time or *what to make of themselves.*

He likes to keep himself *in evidence* [*en évidence*, conspicuous].

His powers were *placed in evidence* by her not daring to utter a sarcasm.

There were four windows *giving on* [*donner sur*, to overlook] the yard.

Technical Terms.

138. Every science, every art, every occupation has words and phrases peculiar to itself. The use of these **technical terms** saves much time and trouble, but a writer should employ them only when he has reason for believing that his readers are quite familiar with them. He should never employ them when writing for the general reader, as they are certain to be unintelligible.

How many persons could understand the following lines,[1] for example?

Oh, lovely Clara, hie with me
  Where Cryptogams in beauty spore,
Corticiums creep on trunk and tree,
  And fairy rings their curves restore;
Mycelia there pervade the ground
  And many a painted pileus rear,
Agarics rend their veils around
  The ranal overture to hear.

Where gay Peziзae flaunt their hues
  A microscopic store we'll glean,
To sketch with camera the views
  In which the ascus may be seen.
Beneath our millimetric gaze
  Sporidia's length will stand revealed,
And eyes like thine will trace the maze
  In each hymenium concealed.

Æstivum tubers we shall dig
  Like Suidæ in Fagian shade,
And many a Sphæria-sheltering twig
  Will in our vascula be laid.
For hyaline Sclerotia we shall peer
  In bark and brassicaceous leaves,
And trace their progress through the year
  Like bobbies on the track of thieves.

[1] From 'To Clara Morchella Deliciosa: a Mycological Serenade.' This poem being written by a scientific man (Mr. A. S. Wilson, of North Kinmundy, Aberdeenshire), and read to a scientific body (the Cryptogamic Society of Glasgow), admirably fulfilled its purpose.

The following anecdote is to the point :—

A medical witness, describing the injuries of the prosecutor, said that he had found him suffering from a severe contusion of the integuments under the left orbit, with great extravasation of blood and ecchymosis in the surrounding cellular tissue, which was in a tumefied state. The judge interrupted him with : 'You mean, I suppose, that the man had a black eye.' 'Yes,' said the doctor. 'Then,' asked the judge, 'why not say so at once?'

Exercise 75.

Substitute non-technical words for those printed in italics.

The bound volume was forfeited as a *deodand* but not claimed.

The child *has premonitory symptoms of incipient rubeola* [is going to have the measles].

Nucleated corpuscles multiply by division which is *fissiparous* or *gemmiparous.*

Elastic tissue occurs both in the form of fibres and thin *homogeneous* membranes. It gets its name from being highly *extensible* and *resilient.*

Adipose tissue consists of a number of minute *vesicles.*

The *costal* cartilages are prolonged forward to the *sternum.*

Articulating with the upper end of the *sternum* in the *human subject* are the *clavicles.*

ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

Meaning dependent on Arrangement.

139. A lady who was watching an artist at work on a picture asked him what was the secret of good painting. 'There is no secret,' he replied ; 'all that you have to do is to choose the right colours and put them in the right places.' 'Thank you very much,' she said ; 'I am glad that it is so easy ; I will go home and begin at once.'

140. The artist's description of the art of painting may be adapted to the art of composition. All that we have to do is to choose the right words and put them in the right places.

141. The arrangement of words is not subject to such rigid rules in fully inflected languages as in languages that are less inflected. Thus, in Latin, the sentence

Gloria virtutem sequitur

may without any change of meaning be written—

Gloria sequitur virtutem ;
Sequitur gloria virtutem ;
Sequitur virtutem gloria ;
Virtutem sequitur gloria ;

and

Virtutem gloria sequitur ;

whereas the corresponding English sentence can be written in only one way—

Glory follows virtue.

142. This example shows that when the Subject and the Object are both Nouns we cannot, from the *formation*[1] of the words, tell which is the Subject and which is the Object ; only the *position* of the words enables us to decide.

143. Moreover, the whole meaning of a sentence may depend on the placing of a word less important than either Subject or Object. Thus the sentence

The inspector promised to examine the school which was closed

may, by the insertion of the Adverb *yesterday* in three different places, be made to convey three different meanings :—

(1) The inspector yesterday promised to examine the school which was closed.

(2) The inspector promised to examine yesterday the school which was closed.

(3) The inspector promised to examine the school which was closed yesterday.

The Usual Order.

144. Much insight into the principles which underlie the arrangement of words may be derived from an examination of the order in which the different parts of a given sentence are placed.

[1] This statement needs some trifling qualifications. When, for example, the Nouns are of different Numbers we can tell from the Number of the Verb which Noun is the Subject.

Exercise 76.

Examine the order in which the different parts of the following sentences are placed. Note

(a) *Where the Subject, the Predicate, and the Object stand in relation to each other; and*

(b) *Where qualifying words, qualifying phrases, and qualifying clauses stand in relation to the words qualified.*[1]

Rain is falling.
Thou art the man.
The very houses seem asleep.
The path of duty is the way to glory.

What objects are the fountains
Of thy happy strain?

Every turf beneath their feet
Shall be a soldier's sepulchre.

Britannia needs no bulwarks,
No towers along the steep.

He has exalted them of low degree.

An unwonted splendour brightened
All within him and without him.

Evil communications corrupt good manners.
All the valuable books then extant in all the vernacular dialects of Europe would hardly have filled a single shelf.
The squire sent her a brace of partridges.

The spirit of your fathers
Shall start from every wave.

Man wants but little here below.
That you have wronged me doth appear in this.
Whate'er is best administered is best.
Things are not what they seem.

[1] See 'Notes for Teachers,' Note 15.

They say the tongues of dying men
Enforce attention like deep harmony.

He hath heard that men of few words are the best men.
The village all declared how much he knew.

The flame that lit the battle's wreck
Shone round him o'er the dead.

The spirits I have raised abandon me.
He that loses his conscience has nothing left that is worth keeping.

It is the hour when from the boughs
The nightingale's high note is heard.

A Turkey carpet was the lawn
Whereon he loved to bound.

Satire is a sort of glass wherein beholders generally discover everybody's face but their own.

Nature never did betray
The heart that loved her.

The king himself has followed her,
When she has gone before.

Life has passed with me but roughly
Since I saw thee last.

My muse doth not delight me
As she did before.

Corruption was necessary to the Tudors, for their parliaments were feeble.
Freely we serve because we freely love.
Judge not, that ye be not judged.
Let my people go that they may serve me.
Have respect to mine honour that you may believe.
Laziness travels so slowly that poverty soon overtakes him.
As the hart panteth after the water-brooks, so panteth my soul after thee.

As the sun breaks through the darkest clouds,
So honour peereth through the meanest habit.

Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.
Though hand join in hand, the wicked shall not go unpunished.
If you have tears, prepare to shed them now.

Had she lived a twelvemonth more,
She had not died to-day.

Know ye not Agincourt?
Who knows not that truth is strong, next to the Almighty?
We shall soon meet again.
Our name is no more heard there.
Every jolly Jack will soon be coming back.
The two great national seats of learning had even then acquired the characters which they still retain.
Some of them would even in our time deserve the praise of eminent disinterestedness.
Those who had directed public affairs had been, with few exceptions, warriors or priests.
The woman, being in great trouble, was weeping.
My friends, expecting me, did not go out.
The principles of conservatism and reform carried on their warfare in every part of society, in every congregation, in every school of learning, round the hearth of every private family, in the recesses of every reflecting mind.

There is in the wide lone sea
A spot unmarked but holy.

There came a lion and a bear.
There stood proud forms around his throne.
It was told the king of Egypt that the people fled.
The reader will, of course, understand the precise amount of seasoning which must be added to it before he adopts it as one of the axioms of his life.
Audacious self-esteem, with good ground for it, is always imposing.
Don't you know how hard it is for some people to get out of a room after their visit is really over?
The race that shortens its weapons lengthens its boundaries.

The Subject.

145. The Subject usually comes before the Verb; as

Rain is falling.
Thou art the man.
Saul was chosen king.

The Object.

146. The Object is placed after the Verb; as

Cats catch *mice*.
Soldiers fight *battles*.
Mary is minding *baby*.

Adjuncts qualifying Nouns.

147. A Noun (or Pronoun) may be qualified or enlarged by:—

(1) An Adjective; as

Right on our flank the *crimson* sun went down,
The *deep* sea rolled around in *dark* repose.

(2) A Participle; as

The traveller, *being exhausted*, could go no further.

(3) A Participial Phrase; as

At early morning to rest her head
She throws herself on her weary bed,
Longing to sleep the sleep of the dead.

(4) A Prepositional Phrase; as

The path *of duty* is the way *to glory*.

Every turf *beneath their feet*
Shall be a soldier's sepulchre.

(5) A Possessive; as

And *Zion's* daughters poured their lays
With *priest's* and *warrior's* voice between.

(6) An Adjective Clause; as

They *that govern most* make least noise.

148. An Adjective is generally placed immediately before the Noun that it qualifies.

'By a fortunate convention of our language the simple Adjective comes before the Noun. This is an arrangement that is scientifically the most defensible. Before the thing is named the mind should be prepared with all the qualifications and limitations, so as to conceive the thing at once as qualified and limited. *A white rose* is better than *a rose white*, as, in thinking of the rose, we already clothe it with the white colour, instead of thinking of it first as red, perhaps, and then having to change to white.'—BAIN, *Companion to 'The Higher English Grammar,'* p. 302.

149. In poetry a Noun is often followed by the Adjectives that qualify it ; as

We sat within the farmhouse *old.*

He strippeth his arms to his shoulders *strong.*

150. Even in prose, when a Noun is qualified by two or more Adjectives they are sometimes placed after the Noun ; as

And now begins a fight *most fierce* and *fell.*

Truth appeared with looks *serene, courteous, cheerful,* and yet *modest.*

151. An Adjective qualified by a phrase or clause generally comes after the Noun ; as

He has acquitted himself of his task in a manner *honourable* to his talents and to his character.

The preface is evidently the work of a sensible and candid man, *firm* in his own religious opinions, and *tolerant* towards those of others.

152. In such sentences as the following (ascribed by Earle to our increased acquaintance with German literature), an Adjective qualified by a phrase comes before the Noun, but the effect is not pleasing :—

In that *not more populous than popular* thoroughfare . . .

The utter extinction of their species in these islands may be looked upon as a *by no means remote* eventuality.

This, I fear, cannot be said of our, *happily in all other respects cleaner,* island.

As illustrating the *very commonly to be observed* presence of sherds, flints, and pebbles in graves . . .

153. Particular care must be taken in placing an Adjective or Adjective Phrase when there are several words to which it may apply.

The following sentences are faulty :—

(1) Locke was an unquestioned man of genius.

This should be

Locke was a man of unquestioned genius.

(2) Othello, seizing a bolster full of rage and jealousy smothers her.

Othello, and not the bolster, was full of rage and jealousy.

(3) The Board of Education has resolved to erect a building large enough to accommodate 500 students, three storeys high.

'Three storeys high' should come after 'building.'

(4) The annual parents' meeting was held last night.

There is no such thing as an annual parent.

154. When a **Participle** is used as an Adjective it is subject to the same rules of position as the Adjective ; as

The hawthorn bush with seats beneath the shade
For *talking* age and *whispering* lovers made.

155. A Participle not used as an Adjective and not forming part of a phrase generally comes after the word qualified ; as

Napoleon *having been defeated* there was peace.

And he, *neglected and oppressed,*
Wished to be with them and at rest.

156. **A Participial Phrase** is placed after the Noun qualified ; as

On the other hand was the calm and subtle prelate, *versed in all that was then considered learning, trained in the schools to manage minds and in the confessional to manage hearts.*

Throughout the volume are discernible traces of a powerful and independent mind, *emancipated from the influence of authority and devoted to the search of truth.*

157. Where there can be no doubt as to the word qualified, the Participial Phrase need not always come immediately after ; thus :—

He went out rather sullenly, *carrying his piece of plum-cake.*

158. When, however, there are two or more words that the Participial Phrase can qualify, great care should be taken in placing it, for we must write not so that the reader may understand if he will, but so that he must understand whether he will or not.[1]

159. In the following sentences the placing of the Participial Phrase is open to objection :—

(1) Please receive a ticket from the attendant torn from the book.

[1] Non ut intelligere possit, sed ne omnino possit non intelligere curandum.—QUINTILIAN *Instit.* lib. viii., cap. 2.

The ticket and not the attendant is torn from the book. The sentence should therefore read

Please receive from the attendant a ticket torn from the book.

(2) There is an odd little story about Madam Hading drifting about New York.

Madam Hading did not drift about New York. The sentence would be better

There is drifting about New York an odd little story about Madam Hading

though it would still be objectionable from the misuse of the word *drifting*.

(3) An exhibition of drawings by lady amateurs well worthy of inspection has been opened.

The lady amateurs may have been well worthy of inspection, but that was not what the writer meant.

Exercise 77.

Re-arrange the following sentences:—[1]

Miss —— will be much obliged if they will favour her with a temporary loan of such letters . . . as might be of service in the preparation of a biography *addressed to* ——.

She returned it with pleasure, and then *advancing still nearer* he spoke both to her and Mrs. Allen. [It was he who advanced.]

It is a story of a Scottish maiden, the daughter of a retired military veteran, *brought up in an English country town.*

I received the book from the last witness *marked* '*E.*'

There was a discussion on schools *held on the road.*

A little while after the squire called for his tea, which he drank out of a small bowl *qualified with brandy.*

Portable indiarubber boats to carry one or more persons *weighing forty to fifty pounds* . . .

She found a boy lying with half his body out of the window and his short legs flying in the air *blowing soap bubbles.*

There is a facsimile of the original tapestry kept on a windlass in the hall of the prefecture at Bayeux, Normandy, *worked by Matilda, the wife of William the Conqueror and her ladies.*

[1] In this and the following exercises dealing with arrangement, the faults cannot always be removed by simply improving the order. Sometimes it will be necessary to re-cast the sentences.

To bring this senseless correspondence to a close *begun by a member of the Board* allow me to say . . .

The company are prepared to supply coals at the following low quotations, *all being well screened and clear burning.*

One chair after another landed ladies at the baronet's door, *more or less painted, patched, brocaded.*

The Rev. B. B. came in at the tail of a whole string of bishops *neatly attired for the part in eyeglasses and black bow-tie and a simper.* [It wasn't the bishops who were 'neatly attired,' &c.]

160. A Prepositional Phrase should come immediately after the word qualified; as

> No stores *beneath its humble thatch*
> Required a master's care.

161. This rule should be observed with particular care when there are two or more words that the phrase may qualify; as in the following sentences:—

(1) Lost, a valuable silk umbrella belonging to a gentleman with a curiously carved head.

Perhaps the best correction of this is:—

Lost, a gentleman's valuable silk umbrella with a curiously carved head.

(2) One of the combatants was unhurt and the other sustained a wound in the arm of no consequence.

Punch, in quoting this sentence from the report of a French duel, might well ask which is the arm of no consequence.

(3) A piano for sale by a lady about to cross the Channel in an oak case with carved legs.

This sentence is improved by re-arranging thus:—

For sale by a lady about to cross the Channel, a piano in an oak case with carved egs.

(4) Wanted, a handsome Shetland pony suitable for a child with a long mane and tail.

Place 'for a child' after 'wanted.'

Exercise 78.

Re-arrange the following sentences:—

I have a book at home which I call my Domesday Book, with every man of quality's age and distemper *in town.*

Couldn't a smelling-bottle be painted in instead, with a crest and a gold top, or a cambric pockethandkerchief, in lieu of the horrid pig *with a pink coronet in the corner*?

It was not very wonderful that Catherine should prefer cricket, baseball, riding on horseback, and running about the country *at the age of fourteen* to books, or at least books of information.

M. J. S. was charged with breaking two panes of glass at the house of her husband from whom she has been recently separated *in the Cambridge Road*.

Wolsey left at his death many buildings which he had begun *in an unfinished state*.

The applicant said that he had already put up notices prohibiting the use of words which had not previously been submitted to him *under pain of instant dismissal*.

M. Alphand is now negotiating for the preservation of the luminous fountains with the English company which has supplied the apparatus *with every prospect of success*.

Only a few years ago their lord and master held in bondage hundreds of men charged with the same offence *upon the mere fiat of a magistrate*.

After the commencement of service it is requested that no one will enter the church but by the porch door on the north side.

162. Writers for newspapers misplace the Prepositional Phrase in such frequently recurring sentences as

The death is announced of Mr. Brown . . .

163. Dean Alford calls this 'an odious form of speech,' and adds :—

'Sometimes we have the sentence still further divaricated thus :—

'The death is announced in the Liverpool journals at his seat in the North of Scotland of acute bronchitis of Mr. Blank.

'The source of this clumsy arrangement must, I suppose, be sought in the fact of our not being able to use the convenient impersonal form of the French and say, "They announce." But there are many ways in which the thing might be better said, and among them the very simple one of keeping the plain order of the words :—

'"The death of Mr. Blank is announced in the Liverpool journals."'—*The Queen's English*, § 449.

Exercise 79.

Re-cast the following sentences :—

Its convex surface by raising the breast enabled the priest to perform his diabolical task more easily of removing the heart.

The death is announced from San Francisco under melancholy circumstances of Mr. A. H. C.

The death occurred on Wednesday at a very advanced age of the Rev. T. P. L. B.

The influence over our debates will not soon cease of his genial presence and moderating wisdom.

During the trials in 1826 of the persons connected with secret societies in Poland . . .

We have to record with deep regret the death which took place yesterday at his residence [why not *home*?], Clewer Park, Windsor, of Sir Daniel Gooch.

Beyond this the arts cannot be traced of civil life.

164. An **Adjective Clause** should come immediately after the word qualified ; as

I know a bank *whereon the wild thyme blows.*

Look to the rock *whence ye are hewn.*

Know ye the land *where the cypress and myrtle*
Are emblems of deeds that are done in their clime?

There was never yet philosopher
That could endure the toothache patiently.

165. This rule must be observed with particular care when there are two or more words that the phrase may qualify ; thus :—

(1) My cousin caught a crab and took it home in a pail of water which we had for our tea.

It was not the pail of water that we had for our tea. The sentence may be amended thus :—

My cousin caught and took home in a pail of water a crab, which we had for our tea.

(2) She bought household goods and wearing apparel in contemplation of the wedding which cost 30*l.*

The wedding did not cost 30*l.* Begin with 'In contemplation of the wedding.'

(3) It is folly to pretend to arm ourselves against the accidents of life by heaping up treasures which nothing can protect us against but the good providence of our heavenly Father.

The sentence would be better re-cast; it is improved by placing 'by heaping up treasures' after 'pretend.'

Exercise 80.

Re-arrange the following sentences :—

Many act so directly contrary to this method that from a habit of saving time and paper *which they acquired at the University* they write in so diminutive a manner that they can hardly read what they have written.

We must bring back those who have felt it their duty to join other congregations *whose presence and support we can ill afford to lose.*

He then softly unloosed the bracelet from her arm *which Posthumus had given her.*

My life was absolutely in her power *which I would lose for her sake.*

—— was summoned for sending four quarters of meat to the Central Meat Market *which was unfit for human food.*

Here a halt was made to take in coal and water *which lasted half an hour.*

It seems that there were wiseacres in America in those days and the breed still survives *whose auri sacra fames induced them to neglect their business by day and spend their nights digging along the river sides and coasts for money.*

Southey's favourite daughter, Edith May, a daughter by the first wife *who became Mrs. Warter*, is better evidence on such a subject than Carlyle.

It was not right for a person to descant on Bacon *who never seems to have read the Sylva Sylvarum* [one of Bacon's books].

It is not easy to find any system of instruction except that followed by architectural students of the best class *which at present may be relied on.*

They affect an interest in some particular class of art *which they are neither prepared to justify nor to transfer in any other direction.*

Stepney wrote a poem on the University of Cambridge burning the Duke of Monmouth's picture *who was their Chancellor.*

He subsequently offered them to the editor of the *Pall Mall Gazette* for a thousand pounds *who declined to buy them.*

It loves to break the chains from others' limbs, *by which it disdains to have its own enfettered.*

I want a fresh habit of a fashion never seen before to draw the gallants' eyes *that sit upon the stage.*

They talk very insipid stuff about the enemy which ends in Captain Manning being sent to reconnoitre *who receives the commission with thanks.*

They knew little of Cortés *who reasoned thus.*

On Saturday night there was found in the Thames off Charing Cross a woman's jacket done up in some newspaper *which on being examined was found to have blood stains especially at the back just below the neck.*

Mr. Disraeli delivered a rambling and disjointed string of jocosities and abstractions, by no means equal to his last Irish speech *which rather wearied the House.*

She published a separate volume of poems, and contributed many beautiful short pieces of poetry to periodicals, *which are marked by great vigour and originality.*

He was arrested in bed, and attempted to commit suicide by firing a pistol at his head, *which he had concealed amongst the bed-clothes.*

Very tenderly does Arethusa appeal to her son not to deprive her of his protection, companionship, and help, *who had devoted her life to him* by retiring into a monastery.

The most interesting news from Italy is that of the trial of the thieves who robbed the Bank at Genoa in open daylight *which commenced* [why not *began*?] *at Genoa on the fifth.*

I with my family reside in the parish of Stockton *which consists of my wife and daughters.*

166. When the Relative Pronoun introducing an Adjective Clause is governed by a Preposition, careless writers sometimes place the Preposition at the end of the sentence; thus :—

That is the house which he lives *in.*

167. This fault is always committed when the Relative Pronoun is omitted; thus :—

This is the house he lives *in.*

And herein we have one argument against omitting the Relative.

Exercise 81.

(a) *Place the Prepositions before the Relative Pronouns governed by them.*

John is the friend whom I depended on.
It was my brother's carriage which you saw me in.
This is the field which I spoke of.
Mr. Brown is the teacher whom we sent our boy to.

He is a man whom we can depend on.
The girl brought in the tea which she was sent for.
That is the hole which the mouse went into.

(b) *Insert the omitted Relatives, and place the Prepositions before them.*

That is the very thing I was looking for.
Mr. Smith is the man we are waiting for.
Have you seen the house we live in now?
His was the statement I depended on.
She is one I rely on.
The road you met me in is newly paved.
Who owns the field we came through?

168. A **Noun or Pronoun in the Possessive Case** is placed before the name of the thing possessed; as

When the rock was hid by the *surges'* swell
The mariners heard the warning bell.

Down came the storm and smote amain
The vessel in *its* strength.

169. The sign of the Possessive is sometimes attached to the wrong word; as

I was forced to call at his Grace's house (the Archbishop of Canterbury).

'His Grace, the Archbishop of Canterbury's house' would be better. 'The house of his Grace the Archbishop of Canterbury' would be better still.

The following sentence admits of the same two modes of amendment:—

The list is carefully prepared in the Chamberlain's (Earl of Lathom) department.

170. The use of the Possessive sometimes causes ambiguity; as in

Many birds' songs.

Does this mean

The songs of many birds

or

Many songs of birds?

So with

One or two doctors' patients.

Exercise 82.

Correct the following sentences:—

They censured the governor's (as they called him) severe administration.

He was not willing to accept Captain G.'s (the chief mourner) apology for delay.

James's company (my eldest brother) is quite delightful.

Raw cow's milk[1] is better for children than boiled.

I can affirm the accuracy of Mr. Evans's (the rural dean) statements of our churches.

Hume's 'Natural Religion' called forth Dr. Beattie's (author of 'The Minstrel') able work.

He found the place replete with wonders of which he proposed to solace himself with the contemplation.

These are the master's rules who must be obeyed.

They attacked Northumberland's house whom they put to death.

Ellen's (my eldest cousin) portrait comes first.

France's (as we read) noblest chivalry fell on the plain.

They eagerly obeyed the Protector's (as they called him) imperious mandates.

Adjuncts qualifying Verbs.

171. A Verb may be qualified or enlarged by—

(1) An Adverb; as

The folding-doors were *immediately* thrown open for his reception.

(2) An Adverbial (or Prepositional) Phrase; as

I have often considered these poor souls *with an eye of great commiseration.*

(3) An Adverbial Clause; as

Some supposed that Signor Nicolini was to subdue the lion in recitative *as Orpheus used to serve the wild beasts in his time.*

172. The **Adverb** qualifying an Intransitive Verb is generally placed after the Verb; as

We look *before* and *after.*
Duncan comes *here to-night.*
After life's fitful fever he sleeps *well.*

[1] The opinion now held by physicians that 'raw cow's milk is better for children than boiled' is very gratifying, as a raw cow gives much more milk than a boiled one.—*American paper.*

173. Some Adverbs, however, are generally placed before the Verbs qualified; as

The fireman is *ever* ready.
The soldier *never* returned.
I *often* saw him formerly, but he *seldom* comes now.

174. A few Adverbs are placed indifferently before and after the Verbs qualified; as

Our uncle comes here *sometimes*.
Our uncle *sometimes* comes here.

175. Adverbs qualifying compound Verbs are often placed between the Auxiliary and the principal Verb; as

The life of these men is *finely* described in Holy Writ by the path of an arrow, which is *immediately* closed up and lost.

176. When the Verb is in the Active Voice and its Object is short, the Adverb is generally placed after the Object; as

He sold his horse *yesterday*.
We like our teacher *very much*.
She learns her lessons *carefully*.

177. When, however, the Object is long, the Adverb is generally placed before it; as

He bore *unflinchingly* the many cruelties inflicted upon him.

178. Simple Adverbs (with a few exceptions to be dealt with hereafter) are not often misplaced. Care is, however, necessary when a sentence contains two or more Verbs; as

(1) Do you take the physic I send you regularly?

As the sentence stands, *regularly* qualifies *send*, though it was probably intended to qualify *take*, in which case the sentence should read

Do you take regularly the physic I send you?

(2) Unfortunately in the course of conversation he told me that he had a cancer.

Unfortunately should come after *that* or *he*.

179. An Adverb qualifying a Verb in the Infinitive Mood is sometimes placed between the *to* and the Verb (as 'to *honourably*

live, or to *bravely* die'), but this is contrary to the usage of the best writers.

Exercise 83.

Re-arrange the following sentences:—

It is not necessary to *accurately* define the meaning of everything that is said.

To *really* know the man we must go to his books.

I scarcely *ever* remember to have had a rougher walk. [*Ever* qualifies *to have had*.]

I *never* remember to have felt an event more deeply.

I *never* remember to have met with trees of such forms.

I *never* recollect to have been actuated in painting by any such sentiments.

This is the most powerful article we *ever* remember to have read.

His last journey was to Cannes, whence he was *never* destined to return.

The agent called *again* to see you. [*Again* qualifies *see*.]

My sister means to ask you to spend a week with us *to-morrow*.

The cows are coming home to be milked *quickly*. [*Quickly* qualifies *coming*.]

The lecturer begged them earnestly to consider his words. [Make two sentences, *earnestly* qualifying *begged* in the first, and *consider* in the second.]

He intends *seriously* to strive after amendment. [Treat like the preceding sentence.]

I am quite prepared to tell him what I think of him *publicly*.

Her satin soft shoulder is *almost* chemically identical with the plated and roughened mail of the crocodile.

Lovatt and the boatman both turned *continually* their heads.

'Always an impressive sight,' said *solemnly* the Indian.

The poor are the first to feel the evils which result from such a state of things *acutely*.

He *unaffectedly* and *forcibly* spoke.

In the placing of Adverbs, the ear *carefully* requires to be considered *as well as the sense*.

I hope that he will come *soon* back.

180. Adverbial Phrases follow the same rules as simple Adverbs with regard to position; thus:—

(1) After an Intransitive Verb; as

They rowed *from Oxford to Putney*.
His mercy endureth *for ever*.

(2) Between the Auxiliary and the principal Verb;[1] as

The neighbouring parish clerk had, *for an insignificant sum*, purchased a small, disabled barrel-organ.

(3) After a short Object; as

He played all the instruments *by turns*.
He composed numerous tunes *for the band*.
He gained the first prize *from the Huddersfield Glee Club for his 'Sisters of the Lea.'*

(4) Before a long Object; as

They know *by sad experience* the domineering necessities which frequently occur in all great affairs.

181. Adverbial Phrases are often misplaced when there are two or more Verbs in the sentence; thus:—

(1) He blew out his brains after bidding his wife good-bye with a gun.

'With a gun' should come after 'brains,' or the sentence should begin with the other phrase, 'After bidding his wife good-bye.'

(2) Paid to a woman whose husband was drowned by order of the vestry under London Bridge, 1*l.* 1*s.*

'By order of the vestry' should come after 'paid.'

(3) Erected to the memory of John Phillips accidentally shot as a mark of affection by his brother.

This sentence can be re-arranged thus:—

Erected by his brother as a mark of affection, to the memory of John Phillips, accidentally shot.

But re-arrangement alone will not cure all its defects.

(4) The hippopotamus managed to escape, and was only run to earth after alarming the whole neighbourhood in the back parlour of a china shop.

This can be re-arranged:—

The hippopotamus managed to escape, and only after alarming the whole neighbourhood was [it] run to earth in the back parlour of a china shop.

[1] Phrases cannot be placed between the Auxiliary and the principal Verb as often as simple Adverbs. Thus we can say:—
'His anthems were *well* received,'
but we cannot say:—
'His anthems were *with great applause* received.'

(5) Are these designs which any man who is born a Briton, in any circumstances, in any situation, ought to be ashamed or afraid to avow?

Amend by placing the phrases 'in any circumstances, in any situation,' after 'ought.'

(6) He considered marriage with a modern political economist as very dangerous.

Place 'with a modern political economist' first.

Exercise 84.

Re-arrange the following sentences:—

We have been disturbed ever since the child was born *three or four times a night.*

I beg to propose Mr. Smith in the place of Mr. Brown who retires *as a suitable member of the town council.*

Lord Salisbury will reply to Mr. Gladstone's recent Birmingham speech *at the Guildhall.* [Mr. Gladstone's speech was not delivered at the Guildhall.]

I saw him while walking home with a very near friend of mine who has the misfortune to be a duke *in the north of London.* [*In the north of London* is meant to qualify *saw.*]

I perceived it had been scoured *with half an eye.*

Her mistress was anxious to tell her to wash her face *without offending her.*

The body was noticed floating about a mile from where the shirt was found *by a man fishing.* [The shirt was not found by a man fishing.]

As the contractors will be unable to provide dinner for the large number who will be present *without adequate notice* no tickets will be sold after Tuesday.

Facilities will be given to any ladies wishing to inspect the laundry *on application being made to the manager.*

I would not go to the door to see a man *in curl papers.*

It contained a warrant for conducting me and my retinue to Traldragdubb or Trildrogdrib, for it is pronounced both ways as near as I can remember *by a party of ten horse.*

They gained the reputation of doing whatever they professed to do *honestly and effectively.*

He bored my father who suffered much from gout *to the verge of distraction.*

He made an examination on the day the remains were found *in company with Dr. Major.*

Men were led to false conclusions, not through mere ignorance, but from hastily assuming the correctness of the data they reasoned from *without sufficient grounds.*

This necessitated his being parted from the books which he loved *for a time.*

I am glad that you have pointed out the ambiguity in the report as it enables me to give him the credit he deserves, *by sending this letter to the papers.*

He bought the house which he inhabited *for his own residence.*

The 250*l.* demanded by the Abbey authorities having been obtained *on Monday* the statue of Lord Shaftesbury was unveiled. [The money was not obtained on Monday.]

This is a proposal to award superannuation and gratuities to those employed by the board *out of the rates.*

It is not for me to give reasons for what men do *to a gentleman of your learning.*

I had done her an injury for which I hoped to make her some reparation *by robbing her of the innocence of her mind.*

One always associates Carlyle with his pipe *and Lord Tennyson.*

There were rumours of his having been seen in the neighbourhood where the crime was committed *on Saturday night.* [The crime was not committed on Saturday night.]

I desire that you would insert the following letter, by which it appears that the custom is yet kept up and practised *in your magazine.*

Having desired to see Ossey Cacheff *for some time* I received no answer. [He had not desired for some time to see Ossey Cacheff.]

The present Mayor of Colchester is the son of a working man, and was formerly an ironmonger's artisan in the town of which he is now mayor *at eighteen shillings a week.*

The carts though drawn by five horses *owing to the steepness of the road or gangway up the cliff* can only carry about half a ton at a time.

The sight of these [tears] *in Esmond's heart* always created a sort of rage of pity.

I can recall some of my own [verses] written under similar circumstances *with twinges of shame.*

He acts for your Cork correspondent *at Limerick.*

The major believed Stanley to be dead *owing to the absence of news.*

To avoid death by the order of Herod he fled into Egypt.

Shall we stand here and see those we love perish in this awful manner *without an effort?*

The remaining 400 ft. will be completed in January *at the rate of about* 36 *ft. per week.*

The publication of a small volume of poems introduced me to such of them as in my eyes were most worth knowing *as it were by a short cut.*

She had fluttered the doves in the conventional cote by the publication of the Atkinson letters *very considerably.*

She wrote to me, however, though even letter-writing had become toilsome to her, *pretty frequently.*

At that he worked away until he was ransomed *with the greatest perseverance.*

She surrendered to the nobles who had taken up arms against her *at Carberry Hill.*

How is it that no questions were put to the widow as to the treatment of her husband's injuries *by the coroner?*

He intends to blow out the brains of anybody who comes to ask after her *as a journalist or interviewer.*

I have now and then inserted in the text characters of books which I have not read *on the faith of my guides.*

He went from shame to shame, and dishonour to dishonour, and used the fortune which his wife had brought him *in the manner described in those private letters.* [It was the manner of using which was described.]

Truly it should not be very difficult for a clever detective to find out who posts these periodical budgets *with the help of the post-office authorities.*

The householder who does not support the national or parochial schools of his district where they exist *whether from preference for the Board school system or from neglect . . .*[1]

I leaned down, and while I was held by some persons *by means of a boathook* I caught hold of the youngest child.

He posted the letter received and read yesterday *at the railway station.*

Although a Jew *from the desire of gain* he pursued a calling which was peculiarly odious in the eyes of the Jews.

Send the next boy talking *to the master's desk.*

I am perfectly willing to support her as long as she lives *without any assistance from anyone.*

A few nights afterwards every tenant who had been evicted *either then or previously* returned to his holding.

They may choose the time of their departure if they send in a signed engagement to go to Paris *a month beforehand.*

A wealthy philanthropist has just died, bequeathing to each officer *on his deathbed* the sum of 24*l.*

After receiving a good education he began the pranks which will probably lead him to the gallows *at the age of seventeen or eighteen.*

The spire which rises out of four decorated pillars *owing to the settling of the western piers* has fallen nearly four feet out of the perpendicular.

[1] The arrangement of this sentence would be less faulty if the words *where they exist* were omitted; and these words are unnecessary, because the householder could not support schools where they did not exist.

I want you to let me say that I love you *again and again.*

Board schools, the fire brigade, the district lunatic asylums are now provided for by taxation *and also burials.*

It must be understood that the object of the department is to cause the public as much expense as possible and to disturb the leisure the female officers have for chatting with one another and engaging in flirtation with suitable persons on the other side of the counter *as little as practicable.*

He went behind the compact made by the Tithe Commutation Act *in the interests of the tithe-owners.* [It was not the compact that was made in the interests of the tithe-owners.]

Immediately after this resolution was communicated to Mr. Brown *without the sanction or knowledge of the board* he closed the school. [It was the closing which was without sanction, &c.]

After fording the river which runs the whole length of the valley *at midday* we halted.

A barber who came to see what the noise was *as a practical joke* induced them to knock up the constable.

Mr. Smith consented to preside during the mission *at the harmonium.*

At the foot of the hill a halt of some duration was made to replenish the engines with water from the brook crossing the road at this point *by means of a suction hose.*

A butcher was summoned for having the carcasses of three sheep which were unfit for human food *in his slaughter-house.*

As soon as they understood his quality they asked forgiveness for what they had done *with great humility.*

A despotic state will generally be successful if a contest occurs *at the outset.*

182. Adverbial Clauses of Time and Place are placed before or after the Verbs qualified; as

Adverbial Clause of Time before.

When I look upon the tombs of the great every emotion of envy dies within me; . . . *when I meet with the grief of parents upon a tombstone* my heart melts with compassion; *when I see the tomb of the parents themselves* I consider the vanity of grieving for those whom we must quickly follow; . . . *when I read the several dates of the tombs, of some that died yesterday and some six hundred years ago,* I consider that great day when we shall all of us be contemporaries and make our appearance together.

Adverbial Clause of Place before.

Where the long street roars hath been
The stillness of the central sea.

Adverbial Clause of Time after.

Make hay *while the sun shines.*
He had a fever *when he was in Spain.*

Adverbial Clause of Place after.

Go *where glory waits thee.*
Fools rush in *where angels fear to tread.*

183. Adverbial Clauses of Manner introduced by *as* (without a correlative *so*) are generally placed after the principal Verb; as

My muse doth not delight me
As she did before.
My hand and pen are not in plight
As they have been of yore.

184. When there is a correlative *so*, Adverbial Clauses introduced by *as* are placed before the principal Verb; thus:—

As the hart panteth after the water-brooks, so panteth my soul after thee.
As the tree falls so must it lie.

185. Adverbial Clauses of Condition may be placed before or after the principal Verb; as

I will come *if you wish it.*
If you wish it I will come.
Except ye repent ye shall all likewise perish.
Ye shall all likewise perish *except ye repent.*

Generally speaking, it is better to place Conditional Clauses first. The mind is thus prepared to receive with all necessary qualifications the statement made by the principal Predicate. If the Conditional Clause comes after the principal Predicate the idea formed may have to be modified.

186. Ambiguity may arise if the Conditional Clause is not placed either at the beginning or at the end of a sentence.

Thus, the sentence

The expectations of the parents are disappointed *if the children do not work hard* and money is wasted

may mean

(1) *If the children do not work hard* the expectations of the parents are disappointed and money is wasted;

or

(2) *If the children do not work hard and money is wasted* the expectations of the parents are disappointed.

The sentence just quoted exemplifies the need of care in placing Adverbial Clauses when there are two or more principal Verbs which they may qualify. Other examples follow.

(1) If we are to believe the text, our hero was the guide, philosopher, and friend of Dr. Andrew Thomson *when only a lad of thirteen.*

Who was 'only a lad of thirteen'? Probably 'our hero,' in which case the clause should follow 'hero.'

(2) The very landlord's agent who has been giving you all the landlord side of the question *when you come to the subject of evictions* breaks away and becomes an Irishman.

The Adverbial Clause should follow 'breaks away' or 'Irishman.'

(3) He had received a special report that Falmouth was dying *just as he was on the point of mounting his horse.*

Place the Adverbial Clause first.

(4) A flock of redwings scattered over the meadow cower among the grass in terror *as the keen wings sweep overhead,* or with shrill notes of alarm hurry to the shelter of the nearest hedgerow.

Again place the Adverbial Clause first.

Exercise 85.

Re-arrange the following sentences :—

My cousin called *after I had gone out* to hear the news.
We saw some beautiful pictures *when we were in London* to be sold.
The boy has worked hard *since he was promoted* to please his mother.
We walked into the village *just as the sun was setting* to buy provisions.
I am going *when duty calls me* to fight for my country.
I came *because you called me* to know what you wanted.
I will stay *since you wish me* to spend the evening with you.
You will be punished *unless you work* to keep others from following your bad example.

Words requiring special care.

187. The word **only** requires special care.

A change in the position of the word is likely to affect the whole meaning of the sentence. Thus the sentence

I hope to hear from him once more

may by the insertion of *only* assume five different meanings.

(1) Only I hope to hear from him once more.

I hope; nobody else does.

(2) I only hope to hear from him once more.

I hope, but I do not expect.

(3) I hope only to hear from him once more.

Only to hear, not to see.

(4) I hope to hear only from him once more.

From him, not from anyone else.

(5) I hope to hear from him only once more.

Once, not more.

188. An examination of the examples just given will show

(1) That *only* is placed before the word which it is intended to modify; and

(2) That with a Noun (or Pronoun) *alone* is often a better word than *only.*

189. At the beginning of a sentence *only* often has the force of *but*; as

Come when you please, *only* let me know when I may expect you.

190. Before a Verb in the Imperative Mood *only* is used in a diminutive or deprecatory sense; as

Only try to regard your prospects more cheerfully.

191. At the end of a sentence *only* is often used to limit the whole sentence, and to diminish or deprecate the action expressed; as

Brown studied books; Smith wrote them *only.*

Used thus, *only* makes the writing of books appear a smaller matter than the studying of them.

192. In the following sentences *only* is misplaced :—

(1) We were *only* permitted to stop for refreshment once by the way, so that without the provision of cold fowl, bread, and water which we *only*

happened to think of the moment before setting out, our situation would have been somewhat deplorable.

The first *only* should come before *once*, and the second before *the moment*.

(2) These will raise a man above many disappointments, and by leading him *only* to feed his heart upon expectations which are likely to be realised will do very much towards making him rejoice evermore.

Only should come after *heart*

Exercise 86.

Move each **only** *to the right place.*

They felt that under his banner *only* they could hope for victory.

He sub-let it to the agency in question, by which it was *only* used for one week.

Theism can *only* be opposed to polytheism or atheism.

She *only* drank milk *by the advice of her medical attendant.*

I reside *only* in a small country village.

Breathe through the nose *only* in cold weather.

His efforts were confined *only* to remonstrance and exhortation.

Dr. A. remembered that he had a salary to receive and *only* forgot that he had duties to perform.

These revolutions extended *only* to a change of persons but not of principles.

The principle of the bill was *only* confirmed by a majority of one.

Complete popular education *only* existed at Rome.

The captain and the crew had *only* been there about an hour when three canoes made their appearance.

The Polish artillery consisted *only* of twelve pieces.

He was possessed of all the high spirits and happy *insouciance* [an English word would be better] which can *only* charm at that early period.

'The Spirit of Laws' was *only* completed when the author was sixty years of age.

The first two named *only* ascended to the summit.

The river could *only* be distinguished from the ocean by its calmness and discoloured water.

Speculative truth is pursued *only* for the sake of intellectual activity.

The crown can be worn *only* by a Protestant.

I *only* spoke a very few words.

These practices are *only* discontinued through the neglect and degeneracy of later times.

193. When words are used correlatively, care should be taken that they come before the words compared, contrasted, or emphasised. As will be seen by the following examples, each member of the pair should come before the same part of speech.

Not . . . but.

The wise ruler aims *not* [Preposition] at the punishment of offenders *but* [Preposition] at the prevention of offences.

Not . . . but only.

He strove *not* [Infinitive] to punish offenders, *but only* [Infinitive] to prevent offence.

Not only . . . but also.

. . . Providing for honest things *not only* [Preposition] in the sight of the Lord *but also* [Preposition] in the sight of men.

. . . Unto whom *not only* [Pronoun = Noun] I give thanks *but also* [Noun with Adjectives qualifying it] all the churches of the Gentiles.

Not only . . . but.

The Greek language had obtained such a vogue in Rome itself that all the great and noble were *not only*[1] obliged to learn it *but* were ambitious everywhere to speak it.

Not merely . . . but.

They will interest also *not merely* children *but* grown-up persons.

Not more . . . than.

They seem to me necessary to the accuracy *not more* of the extracts *than* of the portrait I seek to give of the writer.

Both . . . and.

The king was weak *both* in body *and* in mind.

Either . . . or.

The fellow must surely be *either* deaf *or* stupid.

Neither . . . nor.

Neither James *nor* his sister was at school this morning.

194. The following examples show correlatives misplaced:—

(1) He strives *not* to inspire liking *but* love.

[1] *Not only* comes between *were* and *obliged*; *but* must come before the second *were*. The Participle (= Adjective) *obliged* and the Adjective *ambitious* are the words compared.

(2) The man worked *not* to provide for the future *but only* for the present.

(3) In considering the life of Seneca we are *not only* dealing with a life which was rich in memorable incidents . . . *but also* with a life, &c.

(4) In one or two places he has caught *not merely* their idioms and phrases *but* has become imbued with something of their high manner of spirit.

(5) Attention to details is *not more* essential to the strength *than* to the beauty of the building.

(6) Every composition is fairly liable to criticism *both* in regard to its design *and* to its execution.

(7) The gods are *either* angry *or* nature too powerful.

(8) His almost vulgar personality may convey to those who are *neither* acquainted with the writer *or* [should be *nor*] his works not altogether an inadequate impression of both.

195. *As well as* requires care.

As well as has almost the force of *and*, and, as in the case of *and*, the words connected should be brought close together. This rule is violated in the following sentence:—

The beaux of the day painted their faces as well as the women.

This means that the beaux painted the women. What the writer meant was

The beaux of the day as well as the women painted their faces.

196. *At least, at all events, at any rate*, and similar modifying phrases should be so placed that there can be no ambiguity.

The sentence

The Britons at least fought as bravely as the Romans

may mean

(1) The Britons fought as bravely as the Romans, though some other nations did not.

(2) The Britons fought as bravely, though they may have no endured as bravely as the Romans.

Exercise 87.

Re-arrange the following sentences:—

The traveller saw that these foreigners *at all events* were as intelligent as their own countrymen.

Others had seen that she was sweet *as well as Oliver.*

It should have been added that A. was acquitted by the jury *as well as B. and C.*

The Commander-in-Chief had to strip off his necessary overcoat *as well as the heads of the garrison and their staff.*

A few hours later one Mahoney strangled the unfortunate man *as well as an accomplice named White.*

He *not only* lent me his carriage *but* also his horses.

I am *not* expecting to hear from my brother *but* from my sister.

I do *not* intend to row to Windsor *but* only to Staines.

These *not only* enable him to bear emotion with impunity *but* to prolong its duration with enjoyment.

Homer was *not only* the maker of a nation *but* of a language and a religion.

The laws are for the government *not only* of those who are to obey them *but* for those who make them.

The result is *not* pleasant to us *only* because it fulfils our predictions *but* because any other would have been productive of mischief.

We cannot *even* have an inclination to do good until . . .

I am *neither* an ascetic in theory *or* [should be *nor*] in practice.

In these times one can *neither* speak of kings *or* [should be *nor*] queens without suspicion of politics or personalities.

Her days *neither* passed in indolence *nor* without enjoyment.

He was *neither* fitted by abilities *nor* disposition to answer the wishes of his mother and sister.

We must *neither* forget the temper of the man *nor* of the age in which he lived.

Neither the name of author *nor* bookseller has the least sway with the editor.

I *neither* believe that there is any contradiction in all this *nor* that Bacon gives us the right interpretation.

He is *neither* disposed to sanction bloodshed *nor* deceit.

Her success is *neither* the result of system *nor* strategy.

He has been *either* educated at a University *or* at a public school.

We cannot admit that *either* in qualities of head *or* heart his women are inferior to the women we generally meet.

I know not what better description I can give you *either* of a great captain *or* great orator.

The engraving is *neither* like me *nor* the picture.

He *neither* shrinks from the cold *nor* the absolutely disgusting.

By greatness I do *not only* mean the bulk of any single object *but* the largeness of a whole view.

Sixtus IV. was a great collector of books *at least.*

If Louis XIV. was not the greatest king, he was the best actor of majesty *at least* that ever filled a throne.

Nor does this false modesty expose us *only* to such actions as are indiscreet, *but* very often to such as are highly criminal.

I think you will find my German *at all events* as good as his.

It is *not only* hard to distinguish between too little and too much reform *but* between the good and evil intentions of different reformers.

This cannot often *at least* be done.

Inverted Order.

197. In poetry words are sometimes placed out of the usual order for the sake of the rime [1] or the rhythm. Thus:—

For rime—

I said, 'When first the world began
Young nature through five cycles *ran*.'

For rhythm—

And *me* that morning Walter showed the house.

198. But often in poetry, and nearly always in prose, the usual order is inverted for the sake of emphasis. A word gains in force by transposition, the most emphatic positions being the beginning and the end of a sentence.

199. The usual position for the Subject is before the Verb; when the order is inverted both Subject and Verb gain in emphasis; thus:—

Not as the world giveth *give I* unto you.

Then *shrieked the timid* and *stood still the brave.*

Gone are all the barons bold,
Gone are all the knights and squires,
Gone the abbot stern and cold,
Gone the brotherhood of friars.

200. In the brief sentences interjected in the reports of conversations the Verb often comes before the Subject; as

'Why, to be sure,' *said Dr. Howe*, 'so he is.'

'Oh, nonsense,' *cried the rector*, 'these young men . . .'

'The hungry sheep look up and are not fed,' *quoted the rector*, in a burlesque despair.

[1] *Rime* (from the A.S. *rim*, number) is absurdly misspelt *rhyme* by confusion with *rhythm* (from the Greek ῥυθμός—*rhythmos*, measured motion).

201. The Complement of a Verb of Incomplete Predication generally comes after the Verb. Emphasis is gained by putting the Complement first; as

Vain truly is the hope of your swiftest runners to escape from his own shadow.

Beautiful it was to sit there in my skyey tent musing and meditating.

Great is the Lord and of great power.

Cold is Cadwallo's tongue.

Wide is the gate and *broad* is the way.

Great [1] is Diana of the Ephesians.

202. The usual place for the Object is after the Verb. Emphasis is gained by placing the Object at the beginning of the sentence; thus:—

Mine head with oil thou didst not anoint.

Whatever wisdom and energy could do William did.

What Pope had done for Horace Johnson aspired to do for Juvenal.

203. The Object is sometimes placed first in order to make the connection with the preceding sentence closer; as

You have hitherto allowed us to earn a bare subsistence; *that bare subsistence* you would now deny.

My lord, his throat is cut; *that* I did for him.

When Goldsmith was writing the 'Deserted Village' and 'She Stoops to Conquer' he was engaged on works of a very different kind. . . . *Those works* he produced without any elaborate research, &c.

204. As there is generally nothing but position in relation to the Verb to distinguish the Subject from the Predicate, inversion of the Object may tend to ambiguity, as in the following sentences:—

And all the air a solemn stillness holds.

—— And thus the son the fervent sire addressed.

205. The placing of an Adverb or an Adverbial Phrase at the beginning of a sentence sometimes has the double effect of

[1] What translator of any taste would ever *voluntarily* alter the arrangement of the words in such a sentence as Μεγάλη ἡ Ἄρτεμις Ἐφεσίων which our language allows us to render exactly, '*Great* is Diana of the Ephesians?' How feeble in comparison is the translation of Le Clerc: *La Diane des Ephésiens est une grande Déesse!* How imperfect that of Beausobre, *La grande Diane des Ephésiens!* How undignified that of Saci, *Vive la grande Diane des Ephésiens!*—Whately, *Rhetoric*, p. 203 (ed. 1882).

emphasising the Adverb and of causing an inversion of the Subject; as

So persecuted *they* the prophets.
With a great sum obtained *I* this freedom.
Then burst *his mighty heart.*
In the beginning was *the word.*

From peak to peak, the rattling crags among,
Leaps *the live thunder.*

To confirm his words out fly
Millions of flaming swords.

Of old sat *Freedom* on the heights.

206. When there are several Adverbial Adjuncts, clearness is obtained by distributing them; as

(1) *There*
he
(2) *with difficulty*
supported his wife and children
(3) *on what he could earn partly as a curate and partly as a farmer.*

(1) *On another occasion*
he
(2) *in defiance of the evidence of his own senses*
maintained
(3) *obstinately and even angrily*
that he chewed his dinner by moving his upper jaw.

207. By the aid of *it* and the Verb *to be* any part of the sentence may be emphasised.

We can, for example, emphasise thus several words in the sentence

I expect you to-day.

(1) It is *I* who expect you to-day.
(2) It is *you* whom I expect to-day.
(3) It is *to-day* that I expect you.

The following are additional illustrations of the same device:—

It was *on the dignity of the senate* that Augustus and his successors founded their new empire.

It was *not without reluctance and remorse* that the Prætorian guards had been persuaded to abandon the cause of the tyrant.

Exercise 88.

Examine the following sentences, observe what words are emphasised, and say by what device of position emphasis is obtained.

Full many a gem of purest ray serene
The dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear.

What in me is dark
Illumine.

What man dare
I dare.

His rising cares the hermit spied
With answering cares oppressed.

The modest wants of every day
The toil of every day supplied.

The pavement damp and cold
No smiling courtiers tread.

Now began to unroll the most awful series of calamities that have ever visited the sons and daughters of men.

Now fades the glimmering landscape on the sight.

Oft did the harvest to their sickle yield.

Then shook the hills with thunder riven,
Then rushed the steed to battle driven,
And, louder than the bolts of heaven,
Far flashed the red artillery.

Into the valley of death rode the Six Hundred.

Within a windowed niche of that high hall
Sate Brunswick's fated chieftain.

All bloodless lay th' untrodden snow.

Silver and gold have I none, but such as I have give I thee.

To render the exertions of this body effective the greatest abilities were required in the emperor. These abilities Charles V. possessed.

With a great sum obtained I this freedom.

Not a drum was heard, not a funeral note.

Jesus I know and Paul I know; but who are ye?

Some he imprisoned, others he put to death.

Military courage he neither possesses nor values.

Dear is the memory of our wedded lives,
And dear the last embraces of our wives.

Great is thy power and great thy fame,
Far-kenned and noted is thy name.

Rare almost as great poets are consummate men of business.
So persecuted they the prophets which were before you.
On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets.
Comes a vapour from the margin blackening over heath and holt.
Out of the depths have I cried unto thee.
In thy presence is fulness of joy; at thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore.

Not wholly sank he. O'er the mist of spray
Glittered his sword.

Mine head with oil thou didst not anoint.

Other refuge have I none,
Hangs my helpless soul on Thee.

To brisk notes in cadence beating
Glance their many twinkling feet.

Of Nelson and the North
Sing the glorious day's renown,
When to battle fierce came forth
All the might of Denmark's crown.

Exercise 89.

[On Pars. 189–207.]

Improve the arrangement of the following sentences :—

He had been in love with his elderly tutor's daughter. [The daughter was elderly.]

The sum of 150*l.* was made chargeable upon a City benefice, where the rector, having nothing to do and plenty to get, had recently died and was added to the revenues of St. Thomas.

Ever since her death he had liked best of all to sit in the churchyard where she lay listening to the billows.

He had the art of moulding the men who served him in his own likeness.

At that day the houses of the virgins of the sun were surrounded by high walls which excluded those within entirely from observation.

This fact is ascertained by the discovery of silver balances adjusted with perfect accuracy in some of the tombs of the Incas.

Nor would he forsake the service of the sun, the immortal divinity whom he and his people revered in order to worship the God of the Spaniards.

The generous, open, affable temper of Almagro gained many adherents of the Pizarros who were disgusted with their harsh and domineering manners.

The French nation is not consoled for the misfortunes which it has endured by the incidental triumph of justice in Italy.

The Indian monarch had his jesters as well as his more refined brethren of Europe.

Referring to the termination of the strike in his pulpit on Sunday evening, Dr. C. said . . .

The battle-cry of the Aztecs like the war-whoop of the North-American Indians was an appalling note according to the conqueror's own acknowledgment in the ears of the Spaniards.

At seven o'clock the police returned to the station with the club property necessary to sustain the conviction which comprised . . .

I was so deaf that I could neither hear clock nor watch.

Altamont leaning on the doctor had been able to get to the corner reserved for him without much difficulty.

As the year is composed of nearly six hours more than 365 days there still remained an excess which like other nations who have framed a calendar they provided for by intercalation.

The governor startled by the sudden apparition of his enemy completely armed with some dismay inquired the meaning of it.

The place was gradually abandoned after the conquest for others in a more favourable position probably for trade.

Taking leave of the hospitable Indian on the following day the Spaniards took the road to Chiahuitzlan.

The suspected man having sold his furniture hurriedly left the neighbourhood.

The good monk seeing the course things were likely to take with better judgment interposed to prevent it.

He carries bills under his arms which he asks permission to exhibit.

A splendid lady's gold watch.
An excellent lady's gold watch.
A beautiful lady's gold watch.
A small gold-faced lady's watch.
A massive gentleman's gold chain.
A most reliable gentleman's gold chain.
A rich gentleman's gold chain.

The agent who had marked her out as the future wife of his son on more grounds than one accused him of stealing some stamps.

A sort of paper was made from it resembling somewhat the Egyptian papyrus which, when properly dressed and polished, is said to have been more soft and beautiful than parchment.

I obtained some praise for my style and bearing among his acquaintances. [The praise was obtained among his acquaintances.]

The feasters showed immediately that they felt released by rising and chatting in groups.

To complete the imposing superstructure of mistakes we have the leader of the House plaintively asking for the assistance of the very men who are determined to utilise the cupidity of the masses to promote a political and purely partisan purpose.

He took the strap from his body which he was wearing.

Only a few minutes were allowed or whilst the horses were being changed for luncheons or dinners.

What renders his death particularly distressing is that it was entirely owing to eating raw oysters and damp feet.

Rowena who was pleased in the same proportion as if to make amends for the brutal jest of her unfeeling suitor requested Rebecca to ride by her side.

Open the visor of the blue knight, Wamba, who seems the chief of these villains. [The command was addressed to Wamba.]

He said he had seen a hand pass through the floor of the summer-house which he believed to be Dr. Brown's by the rings on it.

Throughout the programme is admirably varied.

The council is the executive and not the committee.

A single workroom like the one used by this school in Church Street in any city for the last six months from December to May during which time it usually lies idle with very little expense beyond the original plant and the moderate salary to the teacher would meet all the wants of three or four of the largest grammar schools for boys. [Re-arrangement alone will not cure the defects of this sentence.]

It is reported from Sofia that ex-king Milan has declared that he is going back to Servia to claim the throne which he abandoned in order to put a stop to the anarchy which prevails there.

The carriage drove round ready packed and loaded and absolutely screaming with delight Lady Juliana sprang into it.

He was accustomed to a land at home where every height might prove a cathedral tower.

He has visited several countries as a public minister where he formerly wandered as a gipsy.

We do those things frequently which we repent of afterwards.

Most nations, not even excepting the Jews, were prone to idolatry.

Raised to greatness without merit he employed his power for the gratification solely of his passions.

This morning one of Lady Lizard's daughters was looking over some hoods and ribands brought by her tirewoman with great care and diligence.

A great stone that I happened to find after a long search by the sea-shore served me for an anchor.

These forms of conversation by degrees multiplied and grew troublesome.

The knight seeing his habitation reduced to so small a compass and himself in a manner shut out of his own house upon the death of his mother ordered all the apartments to be flung open and exorcised by his chaplain.

When she has made her own choice for form's sake she sends a *congé d'élire* to her friends.

He spoke of the notion that the national debt might be repudiated with absolute contempt.

He has not left a rivulet so narrow that it may be stepped over without honourable mention.

A clever magistrate would see whether the witness was lying a great deal better than a stupid jury.

The House affirmed the proposal to abolish University tests with enthusiasm.

He was shot at by a secretary with whom he was finding fault fortunately without effect.

England should resist the development of Bismarckism through the destruction of France by force.

People have been crying out that Germany never could be an aggressive power a great deal too soon.

He seems to us to have expressed what we have been putting with force as well as beauty.

They can produce an air after once hearing it with the most perfect exactness.

President Johnson has suspended the execution of the sentence of Mrs. Perrin for disloyalty during her good behaviour.

You have already been informed of the sale of Ford's Theatre, where Mr. Lincoln was assassinated for religious purposes.

He fell asleep after reading it and dreamed that he was in Winchester Cathedral listening to an eloquent sermon on Christ cleansing the leper from the reverend the chairman in aid of the funds of the county hospital.

They expect to have all the new books the moment they are published for a few guineas a year.

She performed her promise of being discreet to admiration.

He always read Lord Byron's writings as soon as they were published with great avidity.

It was destroyed by fire in 1811 it is said by the soldiers of an Italian regiment who were quartered there to avoid the labour of carrying wood and water up the hill.

One good-looking lass who emigrated on arrival at the harbour of Otago had six offers made from the shore before she got landed through a speaking trumpet.

He took the good things which the gods provided with thankful good humour.

Each clergyman declares aloud that he believes it a dozen times every year.

He propounds revolutionary sentiments sufficient to make a bishop's hair bristle on his head in a subdued and ladylike voice.

He was driving away from the church where he had been married in a coach and six.

Guilt is more likely to meet with indulgence than misfortunes.

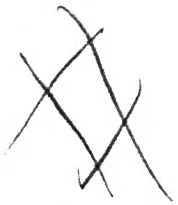
He saw a red flag hoisted in the harbour with a smile of contempt.

These twenty words translate those five which Cæsar uses perhaps with fair accuracy.

Few people learn anything that is worth learning easily.

Mr. Carlyle has taught us that silence is golden in thirty volumes.

John Keats the second of four children like Chaucer and Spenser was a Londoner.



GRAMMAR.[1]

ADJECTIVES.

Repetition of Articles.

208. When Nouns come in a series, if the first requires an Indefinite Article all require it; as

I bought *a* horse, *an* ox, and *a* goat.

209. When several Adjectives qualify a Noun and only one thing is spoken of, the Indefinite Article must be placed before the first Adjective only; as

I have a black and white dog,

that is, one dog, partly black and partly white.

210. But when several things are spoken of, the Indefinite Article must be placed before each Adjective; as

I have a black and a white dog,

that is, two dogs, one black and one white.

[1] In this chapter attention is called only to those rules which are most frequently broken.

211. The rules for repeating the Definite Article are the same as for repeating the Indefinite Article, but are not so rigidly observed. We may say, for example,

The master, mistress, and servants were assembled in the hall,

though the strict rule perhaps requires the Article before each Noun.

212. When any ambiguity is likely to arise, the rule should be carefully followed. The repetition of the Article causes the difference in meaning between the two sentences

We liked the bread and butter

and

We liked the bread and the butter.

So, if we say

The committee elected the secretary and the treasurer

we mean that two officers were chosen; but if we say

The committee elected the secretary and treasurer

we mean that one person was chosen for two offices.

Again, in

> The lunatic, the lover, and the poet
> Are of imagination all compact,

three men are spoken of, but if we use only the first of the Articles we speak of one person who is lunatic, lover, and poet.

213. So with Adjectives. The sentence

The loyal, brave, and honest members resigned their seats

speaks of one class, but the sentence

The loyal, the brave, and the honest members resigned their seats

speaks of three classes.

214. The Old and New Testament

is wrong, because a Testament cannot be both old and new. We can say

The Old and the New Testament,

or

The Old and New Testaments.

215. Note the distinction in meaning between

Fire gives out warmth

and

The fire gives out warmth.

In the first sentence fire generally is spoken of, and in the second some particular fire.

216. In the proverb

A burnt child dreads the fire

the Definite Article is superfluous, as a burnt child dreads not a particular fire but any fire.

217. 'A nice distinction of sense is sometimes made by the use or the omission of the Article *a*. If I say

He behaved with *a* little reverence

my meaning is positive. If I say

He behaved with little reverence

my meaning is negative. And these two are by no means the same or to be used in the same cases. By the former, I rather praise a person; by the latter, I dispraise him. . . . When I say

There were few men with him

I speak diminutively and mean to represent them as inconsiderable; whereas, when I say

There were a few men with him

I evidently intend to make the most of them.'—LINDLEY MURRAY.

Exercise 90.

Strike out the superfluous Articles, and insert the Articles wrongly omitted.

And I persecuted this way unto the death [not a particular death].
Who breaks a butterfly upon a wheel [the wheel was a particular instrument of torture]?
The Almighty hath given reason to a man to be a light unto him
He also is the son [descendant] of Abraham.
The king has given him the title of a duke.
The fire, the earth, the air, and the water were called elements.
The virtues like his are not easily acquired.
He has been blamed for paying a little attention to his duties.

Such extreme disorder called for little severity in the punishment.
He was so impudent and wicked that he found a few persons to speak for him.
He has tried the old and new method of cure.
The chief priests and officers [not the chief officers] saw him.
Wanted, a nurse and housemaid [two servants].
He was placed over the civil and military affairs of the nation.
Novelty produces in the mind a vivid and an agreeable emotion.
A great and a good man looks beyond time.
We look upon these as a first-fruits.

Comparisons.

218. 'When you make use of an Adjective in the way of comparison, take care that there be a congruity or fitness in the things or qualities compared. Do not say that a thing is *deeper* than it is *broad* or *long*, or that a man is *taller* than he is *wise* or *rich*. Hume says

The principles of the Reformation were *deeper* in the prince's mind than to be easily eradicated.

This is no comparison at all; it is nonsense.'—COBBETT, *Grammar*, § 217.

219. In the sentence

The population of London is greater than any other city in the world

we have an example of the fault condemned by Cobbett, population being compared not to population, but to a city.

220. When a thing is compared with everything else of the same class, it is necessary to use *other* (or an equivalent word) with the Comparative Degree, but not with the Superlative; as

Gold is more precious than any *other* metal.
Gold is more precious than all the *other* metals.
Gold is the most precious of all metals.

In the first and second sentences gold is placed by itself on one side, and for comparison with it all the other metals are placed together on the other side. If we said

Gold is more precious than all metals

we should imply either that gold is not a metal or that gold is more precious than gold, as gold must be included in *all metals*.

In the third sentence we arrange all the metals with gold first as the most precious of them. The sentence

Gold is the most precious of all the *other* metals

is absurd, for it excludes gold from the metals to be compared.

Exercise 91.

Correct the following sentences :—

The vice of covetousness enters deepest into the soul of any other.
John is better than anybody in his class.
He thought the Church of England the most perfect of all others.
A talent of this kind would be the likeliest of any other to succeed.
I understood him the best of all the others who spoke on the subject.
Eve was the fairest of her [that is, of Eve's] daughters.
These letters make up a volume of more interest to me than any book.
This caused the author more annoyance than any he met in his whole life.
We take our pleasures as sadly as we do anything.
They were of all other men the least to be offended.
The unwearied exertions of this gentleman have done more towards elucidating the obscurities of our language than any other writer on the subject.

Pronouns.

221. When a Pronoun is employed **in a sentence containing two or more Nouns**, care must be taken to make clear for which Noun the Pronoun stands. Want of care in this respect may lead to ambiguity or absurdity, as in the following example :—

It sprang up and pulled the jar towards itself and put its paw in and pulled it out and ran off to eat it.

This sentence, from a story telling how a cat caught a mouse that had got into a jar, makes the cat eat its own paw. The obscurity arises from the Pronoun *it* having to stand for the two Nouns *cat* and *mouse*, while there are in the sentence two other Nouns, *jar* and *paw*, for which it may stand. Greater clearness is obtained by repeating the Nouns *cat* and *mouse*; thus :—

The cat sprang up, pulled the jar towards it, put in its paw, drew out the mouse, and ran off to eat it.

It.

222. The sentence just dealt with shows that the word *it* requires careful handling.

'The word *it* is the greatest troubler that I know of in language. It is so small and so convenient that few are careful enough in using it. . . . Never put an *it* upon paper without thinking well of what you are about. When I see many *its* in a page I always tremble for the writer.'—Cobbett, *Grammar*, §§ 194–6.

223. It is used

(1) For a Neuter Noun.

(2) For *child*, *baby*, *animal*, and the names of animals generally unless the sex is emphasised.

(3) For an Infinitive or an Infinitive Phrase; as

To take plenty of exercise is as necessary as *it* is pleasant.

(4) For a clause or sentence; as

He is surely innocent; everyone believes *it*.

(5) As preparatory or grammatical Subject when the real or logical Subject comes after the Verb; as

It will kill them *to get wet*.
It is reported *that the prince is dead*.

(6) Impersonally; as

It is raining.

224. The too frequent use of *it* for Neuter Nouns may be avoided—

(1) By a repetition of the Noun; as

He had defended the genuineness of a spurious book simply because Christchurch had put forth an edition of *that book* [not *it*].

It seemed not improbable that at such a moment an insurrection might be successful. An insurrection [not *it*] was planned.

The sense shows that in the first sentence *it* could stand for *book* only, and in the second for *insurrection* only; yet in both cases Macaulay preferred to repeat the Nouns.

The following sentence would be improved by repetition of the Noun :—

I am ready to take off my hat to science in the right place, but at church I want what it [say *science*] cannot give me.

'Repetition is sometimes disagreeable and tends to enfeeble language, but it is always preferable to obscurity.'—COBBETT, *Grammar*, § 273.

The following extract shows how little a careful writer like Matthew Arnold feared repetition :—

In literature we have present and prepared to form us the best which has been thought and said in the world. Our business is to get at this best and to know it well. But even to understand the thing we are dealing with and to choose the best in it we need a guide, a clue. The literature most accessible to all of us, touching us most nearly, is our own literature, English literature. To get at the best in English literature and to know the best well nothing can be more helpful to us than a guide who will show us in clear view the growth of our literature, its series of productions and their relative value. If such a guide is good and trustworthy his instructions cannot be too widely brought into use, too diligently studied, too thoroughly fixed in the mind.

225. The too frequent use of *it* for Neuter Nouns may be avoided

(2) By re-arranging the sentence.

In the sentence

Her hand was so severely injured that unless she has the forefinger amputated she will entirely lose the use of it

the statement made is absurd. Her forefinger is to be amputated in order to save it! The writer's meaning would clearly appear if the sentence were re-arranged thus :—

Her hand was so severely injured that she will entirely lose the use of it unless she has her forefinger amputated.

(3) By simply omitting *it*.

(4) By the use of a Relative.

The sentence

Knowledge comes from study; it therefore ought to be pursued

has two possible meanings. One is made clear by the omission of *it* and the insertion of *and*—

Knowledge comes from study and therefore ought to be pursued.

The other meaning is made clear by the substitution of a Relative for *it*—

Knowledge comes from study, which therefore ought to be pursued.

226. The too frequent repetition of *it*, standing for *child*, *baby*, *animal*, &c., may be avoided

(1) By using *he* or *she*.

The sentence

The horse is in the stable; it has so many points that it may be said to be of Gothic architecture

is ambiguous. The writer's meaning is clear if we substitute *he* for *it*, thus :—

The horse is in the stable; he has so many points that he may be said to be of Gothic architecture.

(2) By using the Plural.

Thus the sentence

It is the duty of a child to obey every order of its parents whether it be agreeable or not

may be changed into

It is the duty of children to obey every order of their parents whether it be agreeable or not.

(3) By altering the structure of the sentence.

When once it [ringworm] is discovered on the person of any child it should be at once sent home

may be changed thus :—

(*a*) A child on whose person it is discovered should be at once sent home.

(*b*) Children on whose persons it is discovered should be at once sent home.

(4) By repeating the Noun.

The absurdity of the following sentence (from directions for the use of a feeding-bottle) would be avoided if *the bottle* were written instead of *it*.

When the baby has done feeding it must be unscrewed and laid in a cool place, say under a tap.

227. The preparatory *it* may be avoided

(1) By placing the logical Subject before the Verb, thus :—

With preparatory it *first.*	*With logical Subject first.*
It is well to wait; it is better to work.	To wait is well; to work is better.
'Tis strange the miser should his cares employ To gain those riches he can ne'er enjoy.	That the miser should employ his cares to gain those riches which he can never enjoy is strange.

(2) By other changes in the form of the sentence; thus :—

With preparatory it.	*Without* it.
It is said that the ship is wrecked.	The wreck of the ship is reported.
It is expected that you should go.	You are expected to go.
It is remarked that wisdom does not always accompany knowledge.	We may remark that wisdom does not always accompany knowledge.

228. The Impersonal *it* may be avoided by altering the form of the sentence; thus :—

With it.	*Without* it.
It is raining.	Rain is falling.
It is very hot.	The weather is very hot.
How long is it since you saw my brother?	How many days (or weeks or months) ago did you see my brother?

229. It must not be inferred from the number of ways of avoiding *it* which have been suggested that the word is necessarily to be avoided. The use of *it* is open to objection only when ambiguity or absurdity results therefrom.

Exercise 92.

Amend the following sentences :—

On revolving the incident in his mind he attempted to scale *it* [a precipice].

The pair have a coach and six waiting in a street to carry off Mrs. Bracegirdle to whom Hill has been making love. As she is going home to supper they try to force her into *it*.

One day we were watching *him* [a cat] lying on the grass with only *its* tail moving.

He [a cat] could not get it [a mouse which was in a jar], so up he sprang, put his paws on the jar, pulled it over and eat *it* up.

After thinking it [the cat] jumped up and turned the jar over and caught hold of *it* and eat *it* up.

The feat was, however, successfully and most cleverly accomplished some few years ago by Mr. Gould, the eminent ornithologist, and *it* [a kingfisher's nest] is now to be seen in the British Museum.

The house was soon filled with smoke, but Superintendent K. with a bucket of water soon succeeded in quenching *it*.

It is indisputably true his assertion though it is a paradox. [Omit both *its* and re-arrange.]

The wind blew down the wall; *it* was very high. [Give in separate sentences the two meanings possible.]

Andrew owned a donkey. He said that *it* lived on the grass which grew beside the road, but the farmers said that he turned *it* into their fields. . . . To-day *it* misbehaved; *it* nearly threw me over *its* head, so I put *it* in your clover-field to punish *it*.

It was our intention to present our readers this month with a woodcut, but we have been compelled to hold it over until our next issue. There is one consolation in this disappointment, *it* has yet to come.

Personal Pronouns.

230. The functions of *it* are more varied than those of the Pronouns properly called Personal, but most of the rules [1] given for avoiding a too frequent repetition of *it* apply to the other Pronouns also, as the following examples will show :—

(1) We do not find in the Bible

He cannot leave his father, for if he should leave him he would die;

but we find the Noun repeated—

The lad cannot leave his father, for if he should leave his father his father would die.—*Gen.*, xliv., 22.

[1] The following may be taken as a general rule :—

'Never write a Personal Pronoun without duly considering what Noun it will, upon a review of the sentence, be found to relate to. There must be a Noun expressed or understood to which the Pronoun clearly relates, or you will not write sense.'—COBBETT, *Grammar*, § 178.

(2) The sentence

Brown saw Jones as he was walking in the park; he wished to see him because he knew that he had a message for him

is ambiguous. Who was walking in the park? If Brown, we can begin

As Brown was walking in the park he saw Jones.

If Jones, we can begin

As Jones was walking in the park Brown saw him.

We will suppose that the first represents the meaning intended, and that it was Brown who wished to see Jones. The whole sentence can then be amended thus:—

As Brown was walking in the park he saw Jones, whom he wished to see, having heard that he had a message for him.

A Relative has been substituted for one *he*, and another *he* has been suppressed by the use of a Participial Phrase.

(3) The narrative of Anastasia's sister Elizabeth related the history of the events by which she had been killed.

Anastasia must have been the one killed, but this would more clearly appear if we re-arranged the sentence thus:—

The narrative of Elizabeth related the history of the events by which her sister Anastasia had been killed.

The sentence is still faulty—'the narrative of Elizabeth related the history' being tautological.

(4) Mrs. Brown presents her compliments to Mrs. Robinson. She has been referred to her by Miss Jones. She states that she has been in her service as governess for three years. She would be obliged if she would tell her whether she found her amiable and efficient.

The disagreeable repetition of Pronouns would be best avoided by turning the 'note' into a letter; thus:—

I have been referred to you by Miss Jones, who states that she has been in your service as governess for three years. I should be obliged if you would tell me whether you found her amiable and efficient.

But, if the 'note' form must be retained, the following rendering is somewhat clearer than the original:—

Mrs. Brown presents her compliments to Mrs. Robinson to whom she has been referred by Miss Jones, who states that she has been in her service as governess for three years. Mrs. Brown would be obliged if Mrs. Robinson would tell her whether she found Miss Jones amiable and efficient.

231. Persons who write notes sometimes find a difficulty in preserving the Third Person, as the following example shows:—

Mr. Smith presents his compliments to Mr. Jones and begs to send the bookcase which I hope will be found as he ordered it. He has not been able to put plate-glass in the windows, thinking it too heavy for light work such as this of mine, but has put thinner glass which I trust will give satisfaction. Mr. Smith will be obliged if Mr. Jones will settle the enclosed account, and I am your humble servant, T. Smith.

232. The use of the Third Person often causes ambiguity in the reports of conversations, as in the following example:—

Witness deposed that he had met M. who said that he had called upon him the day before because he was aware that an article would appear in that morning's issue and he hoped if he could have seen him that he could have prevented the article's appearing. He did not think he made any reply. He then parted with him and went to the company's office, where he reported the conversation he had with him. His directors then gave him instructions as to what he was to do.

233. This confused report will become clear if written in the First Person; thus:—

Witness deposed:—'I met M. who said, "I called upon you yesterday because I was aware that an article would appear in this morning's issue and I hoped that if I could have seen you I could have prevented the article's appearing." I do not think I made any reply. I then parted with him and went to the company's office, where I reported the conversation I had had with him. My directors then gave me instructions as to what I was to do.'

Exercise 93.

Amend the following sentences:—

Over ten years ago the late Mrs. B. suggested the idea to me for her daughter Miss Isabella B. A rough scenario was prepared and the piece practically started. *Her* lamented death [it was Mrs. B. who died] put an end for the time being to the matter.

The first witness examined was the uncle of the deceased who deposed that the boy and *his* father had resided [why not *lived*?] with him for some time, but in consequence of some remarks *he* made to his brother the latter took *him* away to *his* grandmother's house.

The bags came through all right. Cousin Will took the tickets and arranged to have *them* taken up to the house.

Missionaries in Western Africa have been assured by mothers that they at times avoided their own sons lest *they* should kill *them* in order to have *their* service in another life.

She could not seriously embrace [an ill-chosen word] the conviction that Alicia was determined to disobey her, and in order to bring her to a right understanding *she* underwent a system of persecution. [Re-cast the whole.]

She was taller than Sir George Harper's second daughter, but *she* was two years older.

Witness said that his wife's father came to *his* house and *he* ordered *him* out but *he* refused to go.

Father Prémare was quite shocked, and said he could only explain it by concluding that the devil had practised a trick to annoy *his* friends the Jesuits.

After my poor father's death the good gentleman took me because *he* was a captain in *his* regiment and gave me education.

There was a law in the city of Athens which gave to its citizens the power of compelling their daughters to marry whomsoever *they* pleased.

Mr. Bosworth presents his compliments to Mr. Caldecott. I *have* got a hat which is not *his*; if *he* has got a hat which is not *yours* no doubt *they* are the missing ones.

His treatment by the barrister who had so shamefully abused the questionable privilege of *his* profession to question *his* integrity was not only forgiven but even justified by *his* generous victim.

Her own story was that *she* had a quarrel with the deceased about *her* wages, and that *she* seized the deceased by the throat and *she* fell, and when *she* got up *she* was looking for something to strike *her* with, and upon this *she* struck the deceased a blow on *her* throat and *she* fell and died almost immediately.

Orlando confessed that *he* was the fond lover to whom *he* spoke and asked Ganymede to give *him* the good counsel *he* talked of. . . . Ganymede answered that *he* came of as good parentage as *he* did. . . . While Orlando was answering that *he* knew not what to think, Ganymede entered and asked the Duke if *he* brought *his* daughter whether *he* would consent to her marriage with Orlando.

A father who brought his boy to the police court complained that *he* got up and ran away before *he* was out of bed.

Mistakes cannot be rectified after *they* have left the shop.

There are indeed but very few who know how to be idle and innocent or have a relish of any pleasures that are not criminal; every diversion *they* take is at the expense of some one virtue or other, and *their* very first step out of business is into vice or folly.

The custom of the manor hath in both cases so far superseded the will

of the lord that provided the services be performed or stipulated for by fealty he cannot in the first instance refuse to admit the heir of *his* tenant upon *his* death, nor in the second can *he* remove *his* present tenant so long as *he* lives.

He told his friend that if *he* did not feel better in half an hour *he* thought that *he* had better go home.

The grand jury found true bills against them, and though *they* threw every obstacle in the way of the proceedings *they* were successfully carried through.

At the lower end of the hall is a large otter's skin stuffed with hay which *his* mother ordered to be hung up in that manner, and the knight looks upon it with great satisfaction because it seems *he* was but nine years old when *his* dog killed *him*.

Mr. J. J. J. applied for a summons against a milkman for disturbing a congregation of which *he* was a member, by the noise *he* made on Sundays while selling milk.

Relative Pronouns.

234. The ambiguity which may arise when a Relative Clause is badly placed has already been exemplified. Equal ambiguity may arise when a sentence contains two or more Relatives referring to different Nouns; as

The Earl of Falmouth and Mr. Coventry were rivals who should have most interest in the duke who loved the earl best but thought the other the wiser man who supported Pen who disobliged all the courtiers even against the earl who contemned Pen.

The first *who* relates to the Earl of Falmouth and Mr. Coventry, the second to the duke, the third to 'the other' (Mr. Coventry), the fourth to Pen, and the fifth to the Earl of Falmouth. The sentence is somewhat improved by division; thus:—

The Earl of Falmouth and Mr. Coventry were rivals for the interest of the duke, who loved the earl best but thought the other the wiser man. Though Pen disobliged all the courtiers Mr. Coventry supported him even against the earl who contemned him.

235. A Relative Pronoun may be avoided

(1) By using a Conjunction; as

With Relative.	*With Conjunction.*
The boy drove away the birds that were eating the corn.	The birds were eating the corn and the boy drove them away.

(2) By converting the Relative Clause into a Participial Phrase; as

With Relative.	*With Participle.*
I feel like one Who treads alone Some banquet-hall deserted.	I feel like one treading alone some deserted banquet-hall.

(3) By converting the Relative Clause into a Prepositional Phrase; as

With Relative.	*With Prepositional Phrase.*
The mariner whose eye is bright, Whose beard with age is hoar, Is gone.	The mariner with bright eye and beard hoary with age is gone.

(4) By using an Adjective; as

With Relative.	*With Adjective.*
Let me have about me men that are fat.	Let me have fat men about me.

Exercise 94.

Reconstruct the following sentences, omitting the Relative Pronouns:—

Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.
A stone that is rolling gathers no moss.
That is a difficulty which cannot be surmounted.
The labour that we delight in physics pain.
The man hath perfect blessedness that walketh not astray.

I cannot strike at wretched kerns whose arms
Are hired to bear their staves.

Those are mountain-peaks which no man has yet scaled.
His power which was unparalleled was used with moderation.

The cannon blast
That just now passed
Hath awakened ten thousand men.

I backwards flew to its billowy breast
Like a bird that seeketh its mother's nest.

Inconsistent Numbers.

236. Avoid inconsistency in the Numbers of Pronouns.

In historical novels and plays we often find the same person addressed in the Singular in one sentence and in the Plural in a neighbouring sentence; as in the following examples:—

(1) Proud damsel *thou* shalt be as proudly encountered. Know then that I have supported my pretensions to *your* hand in the way that best suited my character.

(2) Gold will purchase *you* pleasure; to misuse us could only bring *thee* remorse.

(3) Hear me ere *you* answer and judge ere *you* refuse. The Templar loses, as *thou* hast said, his social rights.

237. A similar inconsistency is sometimes seen in sentences containing Collective Nouns; as

The meeting was [Sing. agreeing with *meeting*] very disorderly; they [Plural] clamoured for a change of government.

Often it matters not whether a Collective Noun be treated as Singular or as Plural, but no Collective Noun should be treated as Singular *and* as Plural.

As has already been stated, *it* may be used for *child*, *baby*, *animal*, and the names of animals generally, but a Masculine or Feminine Pronoun may be used when necessary or desirable. Care should, however, be taken to avoid such a mixture of genders as the following sentence exemplifies:—

One day we were watching *him* [a cat] lying on the grass when *it* caught a mouse.

Exercise 95.

Correct each of the following sentences in two ways:—

(a) *Thy* praise deserves a better tongue than mine to speak and bless *thy* name. Is this the gentleman whose friendly service *you* commended to me?

As I have a violent affection for *thee*, my dear Straddle, if *you* will follow my advice I promise *you*, on my honour, to forgive *you*.

Art *thou* he whom I have selected for this glorious undertaking, and dost *thou* talk of revenge? *You* have, it seems, reconciled *your* conscience to robbery.

Though as a Christian *thou* art obliged, and we advise *thee* to forgive *thy*

enemy, never trust the man who hath reason to suspect that *you* know he hath injured *you*.

I do not desire to bear *thee* company, and I have still hopes to have the pleasure of seeing *you* go without me.

So will I send upon *you* famine and evil beasts, and they shall bereave *thee*.

(b) The army suffers much from their unprotected condition.

The Jewish nation was sunk in idolatry when they were roused to repentance by Elijah.

The nation rejoice when its fleet is victorious.

The mob are dispersed by the police; it scatters in all directions.

The crew is discontented and they are not to be trusted.

The crowd were on the whole well behaved, but a few persons in it were disorderly.

Parliament has met to elect their Speaker.

The board is going to pass a resolution to censure their clerk.

The class are not fond of Tom, though they know he is the cleverest boy in it.

The committee disable him and maintains its right to do so.

The jury were divided in its opinion.

The nation enforces their laws.

(c) We have a pretty cat. We like to see her playing with its kittens.

The shepherd ran after a sheep and caught it just as she was jumping over a hedge.

Each cow knows its own stall. They are lowing for their calves.

The hen is feeding its chicks. She calls them around her with a 'cluck!'

The parrot is on its perch. She is crying 'Pretty Polly.'

The lark is singing its song of joy. She is almost out of sight.

238. The most frequent and perhaps the most disagreeable inconsistency is the use of Plural Pronouns for such words as *anybody*, *nobody*, *everybody*, *one*; for Singular Nouns separated by *or* or *nor*, and for Singular Nouns qualified by such Adjectives as *each*, *every*.

Examples.

(1) If it had been anybody but the odious duke they should not have had you.

(2) Nobody put themselves out of their way to secure her comfort.

(3) Everybody breakfasts when and where they please.

(4) Many a one has gone out of the world no wiser in many respects than when they came into it.

(5) Both displayed great feats of gallantry, nor did either Bois-Guilbert

or the Disinherited Knight find in the ranks opposed to them a champion who could be termed their unquestioned match.

(6) Neither Napoleon nor the Duke of Wellington ever allowed anyone to shave them.

(7) Each of the disputants think themselves in the right.

(8) Every person should be careful of the feelings of those around them.

239. The use of the Plural in these sentences is a poor attempt to supply a deficiency in our language. *Anybody*, *nobody*, *everybody*, &c., are of the Singular Number, Common Gender, and Third Person; but the only Pronouns of the Common Gender and Third Person are Plural.

240. The use of Plural Pronouns in the cases indicated may be avoided in several ways.

(1) Where the context shows that, though the Noun is of the Common Gender, all the persons spoken of are either male or female, a Masculine or Feminine Pronoun may be used. Thus:—

Every teacher did their best to promote the welfare of their pupils

may be written

Every teacher did his best to promote the welfare of his pupils;

or

Every teacher did her best to promote the welfare of her pupils.

(2) The Noun may be made Plural. There will then be no need to make any change in the Pronoun. Thus, the sentence just corrected may be written—

All the teachers did their best for the welfare of their pupils.

The same method may be used with the following sentence:—

A boy or girl should always raise their hats to their superiors.

We thus have

Boys or girls should always raise their hats to their superiors.

The sentence is now grammatical; but it is still absurd, for girls do not raise their hats to their superiors.

(3) Where the statement is general, a Masculine Pronoun may be used; thus:—

Every person whose misfortunes are caused by their own faults are apt to say that they are the victims of circumstances beyond their control.

may be changed into

Every person whose misfortunes are caused by his own faults is apt to say that he is the victim of circumstances beyond his own control.

In Acts of Parliament it is often expressly stated that words which denote males must be taken to include females, except where the sense forbids. Sometimes, however, a statement is not sufficiently wide for the Masculine Pronoun to be used in a general sense. The Pronoun could not be thus used in the sentence

Not one of those present at the ball troubled themselves about the snow falling outside.

In such a sentence a Plural Noun may be used; thus:—

The people present at the ball did not trouble themselves about the snow falling outside.

(4) The offending Pronoun may sometimes be avoided by changing the form of the sentence.

When a child sees an old man or woman standing, they should offer them a chair

is improved by the substitution of *it* for *they*, but the Plural *them* is left for 'man *or* woman.' We can remove *them* by changing the form of the sentence; thus:—

To any old man or woman whom a child may see standing, it should offer a chair.

(5) In the last sentence dealt with we might for *them* have substituted *him* or *her*; thus:—

When a child sees an old man or woman standing, it should offer him or her a chair.

This is a form of speech much employed by lawyers, but it is so harsh that we may cheerfully allow them a monopoly of it.

One.

241. We have seen that the Pronoun *he* may be used in an indefinite or general sense. *One* (corresponding to the French *on* and the Old English and the German *man*) is used in the same way, but neither *he* nor its oblique Cases can be used for *one* or its oblique Cases. Say:—

It is pleasant when *one* has done *one's* [not *his*] work to seat *one's self* [not *himself*] in a comfortable chair, and to enjoy communion with the authors that have been a solace to *one* [not *him*] in times gone by.

242. This sentence shows what a disagreeable effect is produced when *one* and its oblique Cases are freely used.

Exercise 96.

Correct—

(a) *The eight examples given under Par.* 238.

(b) *The following sentences:—*

Everybody was pleasing *themselves*.

I will punish anyone who cannot hold *their* tongues.

If anyone broke the dining-room window *they* could easily get through.

We should try to visit everyone, however poor *they* may be.

I think the man or woman who could let *their* love stand in the way of five and twenty thousand a year is the next thing to being mad. [Re-cast.]

I seldom meet with anybody who is entertaining either from *their* folly or *their* affectation or *their* stupidity or *their* vanity.

A person who is rough and selfish in *their* behaviour will be disliked.

No mortal in *their* senses ever thinks of such stuff now.

Everyone should be polite to those around *them*.

Everyone of them looked on all his associates as wretches of depraved taste and narrow notions. *Their* conversation was therefore fretful and waspish, *their* behaviour brutal, *their* merriment bluntly sarcastic, and *their* seriousness gloomy and suspicious.

Each of them was busy in arranging *their* particular concerns, and endeavouring by placing around *them their* books and other possessions to form *themselves* a home.

When perspective was first discovered, everybody amused *themselves* with it.

Everybody enjoyed *themselves* very much.

Everybody was on deck amusing *themselves* as *they* could.

Each prayed for the other rather than for *themselves*.

No one should marry unless *they* have the means of supporting *themselves* and *their* children.

Each of the sexes should content *themselves* with the advantage of *their* particular state.

Can anyone be fully sure that *they* will not be deceived?

No one should incur censure for being tender of *their* reputation.

We shall be glad to forward a copy to anyone who will take the trouble to send it to some newspaper in *their* neighbourhood.

Everybody feels that *they* ought to keep a diary at least once in *their* lives. [The order is bad.]

We must refer each person to *their* own experience.

Everybody was ordered to put *his* or *her* best clothes on.

No one was without an exact match with whom *they* might precisely correspond.

Everybody rises early and goes to the spring, where *they* partake of [say *drink*] the water with much energy and perseverance.

Every girl should bring *their* books.

No one will answer me as if I were *their* friend or companion.

The prince or magistrate, the soldier or merchant, reconciled *their* fervent zeal and implicit faith with the exercise of *their* profession, the pursuit of *their* interest, and the indulgence of their passions.

Everyone must judge of *their* own feelings.

She fell to laughing like one out of *their* right mind.

With this sauce one could eat *his* own father.

> In such a dream, one might forget his cares
> And dream *himself* in poet's mood away.

When writing on these subjects, one ought to be more than usually particular in *his* endeavours to be *himself* correct.

One can say to *his* friends the things that *he* wants to say.

Demonstratives.

243. A Personal Pronoun is improperly used for the Demonstrative in sentences like the following :—

We ought always to have a great regard for *them* [say *those*] who are wise and good.

Anger is troublesome, not only to those who suffer it but to *them* who behold it.

These two paragraphs are extremely worthy of Mr. Addison, and exhibit a style which *they* who can successfully imitate may esteem themselves happy. [A very clumsy sentence.]

Exercise 97.

Substitute Demonstratives for the Personal Pronouns improperly used.

They who had laid up nothing came upon the parish at once; they who had saved something spent that first.

They who have talents want industry; they who have industry want talents.

They who have nothing to fear need no concealment.

They whose standard he joined hailed his defection with enthusiasm.

They who read the book hastily will not understand it.

He experienced little difficulty in distinguishing from among the pedestrians those who had business with St. Bartholomew.

244. The Demonstrative *that* (with its Plural *those*) is much used in the locution *that of* (or *those of*); as

The leg of the table is stronger than *that of* the chair.
The legs of the table are stronger than *those of* the chair.

245. This form of expression seems borrowed from the French *celui* (with *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*) *de*, used as in the following sentences :—

L'intérêt parle toutes sortes de langues et joue toutes sortes de personnages, même celui de *désintéressé.*

Notre mérite nous attire l'estime des honnêtes gens et notre étoile celle du *public.*

246. *That of* and *those of* may be used to avoid repetition; as

Pitt was suffering from indisposition; he did not rise till his own strength and *that of* his hearers were exhausted.

247. Some writers have too much fear of repetition; but, granting that repetition is to be avoided, it may often be avoided by methods more English than the use of *that of.*

(1) Simple omission is sometimes enough; as

There is no county in England more beautiful than [that of] Surrey.

(2) More often a Possessive may be employed; as

With 'that of'	*With Possessive*
The house of Mr. Brown is bigger than that of Mr. Smith.	Mr. Brown's house is bigger than Mr. Smith's.

In French we could not use the Possessive. We should have to say

La maison de M. Brown est plus grande que celle de *M. Smith.*

(3) Where (as with the names of things) a Possessive cannot be employed, the form of the sentence may be changed; thus :—

With that of.	*Without.*
The rapidity of light is much greater than that of sound.	Light travels much faster than sound.

248. In the locution *that of* the word *that* takes the place of a Noun preceding; care should be taken that there always is a Noun preceding for which *that* may stand. The following sentence is defective in this respect:—

What Mr. Burke considers as a reproach to the French Revolution, that of bringing it forward under a reign more mild than the preceding ones, is one of its highest honours.

That must stand for *reproach*, but 'the reproach of bringing it forward' is nonsense. For *that* we may substitute *the fact*, but the sentence is still very loose in construction.

Exercise 98.

Re-write the following sentences without using that (*or* those) of:—

I see another great man whose mind is a more abject slave to his own greatness and is more tortured and racked by it than those of all his vassals. [*Those* is here equivalent to *minds*, but no such word occurs in the sentence.]

No man shall ever receive a favour at my hands who is guided by any other law than that of my will.

There is one thing the loss of which I should deplore infinitely more than that of liberty and life also, I mean that of a good conscience.

He likewise produced some baked flesh, a little resembling that of venison. [What is the baked flesh of venison?]

The world hath this reason at least to honour such characters as that of Wild.

The number of the metals is much larger than that of the non-metals.

The most triumphant death is that of the martyr; the most awful that of the martyred patriot; the most splendid that of the hero in the hour of victory.

We heard many notes resembling those of the blackbird.

Henry's letters will bear comparison with those of Wolsey.

The manner of Addison is as remote from that of Swift as from that of Voltaire.

I consider it to be a similar place of amusement to that of the Crystal Palace.

Pronouns in -self.

249. The Pronouns formed by the addition of *self* or *selves* to some of the Personal Pronouns can be used—

(1) Reflexively; as

I hurt myself.

(2) Emphatically; as

I myself wrote that letter;

but they cannot be used as Personal Pronouns.

Exercise 99.

Substitute Personal Pronouns for the words in -self *or* -selves.

Yourself and many others were discontented.

Brown and myself met our friends in the park.

After parting from Jones, we again met himself and his sister.

Themselves and their wives were all invited.

A short time ago a letter from myself appeared in your valuable journal.

Herself and friend paid us a long visit.

George and myself spent a month at Brighton.

The visit gave great pleasure to myself and himself.

Yourself alone are to blame.

My brother and myself had a beautiful walk.

Cases of Pronouns.

250. Mistakes in the Cases of Pronouns generally arise from gross carelessness only.

251. When a Pronoun is joined to a Noun or to another Pronoun by a Co-ordinating Conjunction, the two words have the same Case; as

My *brother* and *I* had a game.

Between *you* and *me*, I do not believe him.

These presents are for *you* and *me*.

May *Mary* and *I* go for a walk?

252. Take care that an Interrogative Pronoun governed by a Preposition is put in the Objective Case; as

Whom is that for?

Whom are you going to send that to?

Read again Pars. 76–81 *and work Ex.* 52–55.

Exercise 100.

Correct the following sentences:—

(a) It was not her but her niece Mary that was going to be married.

Everyone present except he guessed why.

'Is it me?' cried the boy.
There is but one man that she can have, and that is me.
Thou partial nature I arraign.
Did you never see the picture of we three?
. . . You who he was always like a father to.
I cannot tell who to compare them to.
Earth hath swallowed up all my hopes but she.
He who had always inspired in her a respect which almost overcame her affection, she now saw the object of open pleasantry.
At each of the places named I had seen men very like him, but not he himself.

Mont Blanc is the monarch of mountains,
They crowned him long ago
But who they got to put it on
Nobody seems to know.[1]

In this state Frank Churchill found her, she trembling, they loud and insolent.
If there is anyone embarrassed, it will not be me.

(b) A thousand weary miles now stretch
Between my love and I.

His wealth and him bid adieu to each other.
Here's none but thee and I.
This life hath joys for you and I.
All debts are cleared between you and I.
Let you and I look at these.
There is a painful difference between the founder of a style and he who imitates it.

(c) Who is it that the goose lays golden eggs for?
Who did that come from?
He's married. To who?
Who did you speak to?
Who did they ride with?

(d) I thought that had only been for naughty ones such as me.
I think Lindore would be more eloquent than me.
I see you can laugh at your friends as well as me.

[1] These lines were written in a lady's album by Albert Smith. Thackeray, being requested to write in the same album, saw them, and wrote under:—

I know that Albert wrote in a hurry,
To criticise I scarce presume;
But yet methinks that Lindley Murray
Instead of *who* had written *whom*.

If they rob only such as thee, who rob all the world, I should hold them right honest folk.
I will not learn my duty from such as thee.
And hock itself is less esteemed than thee.
I will have no such son-in-law that [say *as*] thinks himself better than me.

Then Phoebe started. 'Why,' thought she,
'The babe is near as fair as me.'

Then finish, dear Chloe, this pastoral war
And let us like Horace and Lydia agree,
For thou art a girl as much brighter than her
As he was a poet sublimer than me.

The nations not so blest as thee
Must in their turns to tyrants fall.

Who counted the money? Both the clerk and me.
They know that as well as me.
He must be a wiser man than me.
The work of national ruin was pretty effectually carried on by the ministers, but more effectually by the paper-money makers than they.

253. A Gerund in the Objective Case sometimes has a Pronoun in the Objective Case wrongly placed before it; as

I heard of him running away.

The error is at once apparent if we substitute a Noun for the Gerund—

I heard of him flight;

or if we change the form of the sentence—

Him running away was reported to me.

The Possessive *his* is, of course, the word to precede *running*.

254. Nouns similarly used before Gerunds should also be in the Possessive Case; as

I heard of *John's* running away.

Exercise 101.

Correct the following sentences:—

(a) Do you remember me speaking to you about this book?
He was angry at me distrusting him.
I did not see him in consequence of me being abroad.

What is the use of you whipping a dead horse?
I am sorry to own that he failed through me neglecting to help him.
He trusted to me keeping his secret.
Our early arrival was caused by us taking the train.
I am delighted at you having succeeded.
No good can come of me doing that.
I am annoyed at him being excluded from the party.

(b) This may lead to your ladyship quitting this house.
Vico observes that the wife bringing a dowry is evidence of her freedom.
Her knowledge of the Emperor having left nothing to his son induced her to make such a will.
The fact of William having arrived was unknown to me.

255. In the sentence

That is a man *whom* I know to be faithful and true

there are two Finite Verbs, *is* and *know*; and two Subjects, *that* and *I*. *Whom* is governed in the Objective by *know*.

256. If we change the sentence to

That is a man *who* I know is faithful and true

we have three Finite Verbs, *is*, *know*, and *is*; and three Subjects, *that*, *I*, and *who*.

257. That is a man *whom* I know is faithful and true

is wrong

(1) Because the second *is* has no Subject.
(2) There is nothing to govern *whom* in the Objective, the Object to *know* being the complex clause, 'That is a man who is faithful and true.'

258. The error is at once detected if we change the order; thus:—

(1) I know that is a man *whom* is faithful and true.
(2) That is a man *whom* is faithful and true, I know.

or if we omit the parenthetical 'I know': thus:—

That is a man *whom* is faithful and true.

259. The errors in the following sentences may be detected in the same way:—

(1) He is the man *whom* I believe did it.

Three Finite Verbs, *is*, *believe*, and *did*; only two Subjects, *he* and *I*. Object to *believe* the Complex Clause, 'He is the man who did it.' Changing the order—

I believe he is the man *who* did it.
He is the man *who* did it, I believe.

Omitting the parenthetical 'I believe'

He is the man *who* did it.

(2) He saw a man *whom* he had no hesitation in declaring was Laurie.

Three Finite Verbs, *saw*, *had*, and *was*; only two Subjects, *he* and *he*. Omit 'he had no hesitation in declaring,' and we have '*whom* was.'

260. The sentence

Apprehensive of her father, *whom* she thought it was she stopped

is of a different type. Each of the two Verbs has a Subject, and there is a Verb which might govern *whom*. The Object to *thought*, however, is not *whom* but the clause 'it was whom.' As the Verb *to be* requires the same Case after as before it, *whom* should be *who*.

Exercise 102.

Correct the following sentences:—

As an association we can only recommend those whom we think will make good candidates and whom we know are willing to take upon themselves the duties of the office.

I became acquainted with one of their elders whom I do not believe was a rogue.

The other was from an applicant whom I afterwards learned had only left the office a few minutes before.

He was summoned for the maintenance of his wife who it was alleged he had deserted.

Opposite him was a stranger whom Mark knew must be the count.

He declared things would only end in the taking of his own life or of the man whom he considered had robbed him of his happiness. [Several faults.]

He departed in a perfect frenzy of hatred against the single lady whom he believed had brought about all the trouble.

Sir H. J. then read over the evidence given by Mr. P. yesterday in respect to the witness whom Mr. P. was informed had at the time of his bankruptcy destroyed the papers . . . then in his possession.

It is always a happiness to be with those we love and whom we know love us.

You know surely that La Guyara and the salvation of one whom we believe dwells there was our first object in this adventure.

This was as far as he could carry the case that day, as a witness whom he expected would have been present was unfortunately absent.

He saw on the night of the burglary a man whom he believed was the accused.

Mr. B. then addressed the jury on behalf of Mr. J. who he said he would call to deny the charge against him.

Mr. Allen Thorndyke Rice, who, it is announced, President Harrison has appointed American minister to St. Petersburg, is a distinguished journalist.

An occasional interchange of newspapers was effected through the medium of a dark servant of the Major's, who Miss Tox was quite content to classify as a native.

You will, of course, bestow your hand and fortune upon whomsoever will discover the murderer of your husband.

I have heard persons whom I knew were in the habit of using this form.

The gag forced into the mouth of whomsoever lifts up his voice with a pure heart to preach his faith—that gag I feel between my own lips.

My memory does not serve me as to whom it was.

We were betrayed by those whom we thought would have sacrificed everything to help us.

We met young Brown, whom all agree is very affable.

We were surprised to see the very two individuals [find a better word] whom we thought were miles away.

She was annoyed by the presence of Mr. Jekyl, whom her brother insisted should remain to dinner.

The great teacher himself, whom he might fear would have passed away, is waiting.

She determined to marry nobody, let him be whom he might.

The sign of the Good Samaritan is written on the face of whomsoever opens to the stranger.

I do not know whom it is I serve.

Whom they were I really cannot say.

Whomsoever they accused were cast into her peculiar prisons.

Distinction between who *or* which *and* that.

261. The Relative Pronoun *who* is used for the names of persons, *which* for the names of animals and things, and *that* for all Nouns. A question therefore arises whether any distinction should be made between *who* and *which* on the one hand, and *that* on the other.

262. To understand the distinction proposed, the two functions of Relative Pronouns must be observed.

(1) In some sentences Relative Pronouns are simply co-ordinating. *They introduce a new fact, but the antecedent would be complete and definite without them.*

Examples.

In the lane we met a man who had lost his way.
Yonder dog which my brother gave me is very intelligent.

These sentences may be written—

In the lane we met a man and he had lost his way.
Yonder dog is very intelligent, and my brother gave it to me.

(2) In some sentences Relative Pronouns are *restrictive.* They cannot be resolved into a Conjunction and a Personal Pronoun, and *they introduce something without which the antecedent would not be complete and definite.*

Examples.

The man who had lost his way fell over the cliff.
The dog which my brother gave me ran away.

Here the Relative Clause tells us *what* man and *what* dog; in the preceding examples they told us an additional fact about the man and the dog.

263. Dr. Bain suggests that 'as *who* and *which* are most commonly preferred for co-ordination, it would be a clear gain to confine them to this sense, and to reserve *that* for the restrictive application alone. This arrangement then would fall in with the most general use of *that*, especially beyond the limits of formal composition.' [1]—*Higher Grammar*, p. 37.

264. If the distinction proposed by Dr. Bain were observed, the sentence

I want some medicine for my wife *who* is ill

[1] 'Our translation of St. Matthew's Gospel has been examined for the usage of the several Relatives, by Professor Milligan of Aberdeen, one of the committee for revising the English translation of the New Testament. There are 224 Relative constructions. Of these 175 are in strict accordance with the distinctive uses of *who*, *which*, and *that* as here taught. In forty-three cases *who* or *which* is put for *that*; in six cases *that* is put for *who* or *which*. I believe that there is scarcely one of the exceptional constructions that would not be felt to be improved by being made to conform with the prevailing usage, and Professor Milligan is of the same opinion.'—*A Companion to the Higher English Grammar*, p. 82.

would imply that I have a wife *and* she is ill; but the sentence

I want some medicine for my wife *that* is ill

would imply that I have two or more wives and want medicine for a particular one.

265. Similarly,

That noise is too much for my head *which* aches

would imply that I have a head *and* it aches, while

The noise is too much for my head *that* aches

would imply that I have two or more heads and a particular one aches.

266. If the distinction proposed by Dr. Bain were observed, ambiguity would sometimes be avoided. What, for example, is the meaning of the sentence

There were very few passengers who escaped without serious injury?

It may mean that there were few passengers and they all escaped without serious injury. It probably means that of all the passengers very few escaped without serious injury. The use of *that* would convey the latter meaning.

267. Dr. Bain's rule cannot be rigidly adhered to in all cases. In such cases as the following *that* should not be employed, though the Relative be used restrictively:

(1) Where the Antecedent is qualified by *that*; as

Do you know *that* man *that* is standing near the door?

A sentence like the following, if it had no other fault, should be avoided because of its disagreeable sound:—

My lords, with humble submission, that that I say is this, that that that that gentleman has advanced is not that that he should have proved to your lordships.

(2) Where the Relative is governed by a Preposition *that* should be rarely used.

He is the man that I depended on

is correct; but we cannot say,

He is the man on that I depended

The use of *that*, therefore, throws the Preposition to the end of the sentence, and this is open to two objections,—

(*a*) An emphatic position is given to an unemphatic word.

(*b*) A considerable number of Prepositions may be used as Adverbs, and when not followed by a Noun or Pronoun seem, at first sight, to be Adverbs.

(3) *That* should be avoided where the Relative is separated from the Antecedent or the Verb by a phrase or clause; as

He is a man *that* [say *who*] in spite of difficulties must succeed.
England is a country that [say *which*] with all its faults I love.

Exercise 103.

(a) *Show that the meaning of the following sentences depends upon the Relative Pronoun chosen:—*

Progress through the streets was difficult because of the people {*who* / *that*} were kept back by the police.

Such an action surprised the neighbours {*who* / *that*} had not known him long.

You may visit the Isle of Wight during the next holidays {*which* / *that*} you will spend at Southsea.

I have just met the farmer {*who* / *that*} was going to market.

On the cliff stand the boatmen {*who* / *that*} are watching the storm.

I was overtaken by my friends {*who* / *that*} accompanied me home.

These are the boys in the sixth form {*who* / *that*} are studying Greek.

The mouse {*which* / *that*} the little girl was afraid of was a pretty little creature.

The houses of the town {*which* / *that*} are built of sandstone look clean and neat.

All Nouns {*which* / *that*} are names of qualities are called Abstract Nouns.

We have done many things {*which* / *that*} we ought not to have done.

There is not a single sentence in this play {*which* / *that*} I do not know the meaning of.

(b) *Say of each Relative in the following sentences whether it is used in conformity with Dr. Bain's rule :—*

She had learned that from Miss Wood *who* had heard it from her husband, *who* had heard it from the landlord, *who* had heard it from the boy *that* carried the beer.

He loved the bird *who* loved the man
That shot him with his bow.

He singeth loud his godly hymns
That he makes in the wood.

This hermit good lives in the wood
Which slopes down to the sea.

There was never yet philosopher
That could endure the toothache patiently.

Uneasy lies the head *that* wears a crown.
Most of the novels *which* Scott wrote are very good.

The thirst *that* from the soul doth rise
Doth ask a drink divine.

The roses soon withered *that* hung o'er the wave.

The moon, *that* once was round and full,
Is now a silver boat.

They acted like base cowards *who* leave their rank in danger's hour.
The crisis is one of the most singular *which* have ever occurred.

Down, down, within the deep,
That oft to triumph bore him,
He sleeps a sound and pleasant sleep,
With the salt waves dashing o'er him.

On, ye brave,
Who rush to glory or the grave.

Mankind are first properly to be considered under two grand divisions—those *that* use their own hands and those *who* employ the hands of others.

Antecedents.

268. The Antecedent to a Relative Pronoun should be a Noun or Pronoun in the Nominative or in the Objective Case, or a phrase, clause, or sentence. The sentence

They flew to arms and attacked *Northumberland's* house, whom they put to death,

should be written

They flew to arms and attacked the *house of Northumberland*, whom they put to death,

or,

They flew to arms, attacked the house of Northumberland, and put him to death.

Exercise 104.

Correct the following sentences :—

For my sake pity him, Oceanus,
That erstwhile issued from thy watery loins.

[Venus, who rose from the sea, is speaking.]

I learned much from the master's example who was very kind to me.
Let him stay in our house who live near the river.
She married Fred's sister who is my brother.
We suspected his sincerity who always flattered us.
We were interested in the people's employment who work in the pit.
The man's wisdom is despised who is poor.
Their conduct resembled a coward's who is afraid to speak the truth.
Words should convey an exact copy of his idea who uses them.
The more accurately we search into the human mind the stronger traces we find everywhere of His wisdom who made it.
The sight of his blood whom they deemed invulnerable shook the courage of the soldiers.
We glorify His name and mission who was the Prince of Peace.

Conjunction before a Relative.

269. The Co-ordinating Conjunctions (*and*, *or*, *but*, &c.) join co-ordinate phrases, clauses, or sentences. The phrase, clause, or sentence following the Conjunction must therefore be similar to that preceding it.

270. Applying this general rule to a particular case, we may say that a Co-ordinating Conjunction can be followed by a Relative Clause only when also preceded by one.

271. Such sentences as the following are wrong :—

(1) A cautious Scotchman of a practical matter-of-fact turn of mind *and who* had listened with much unconcern drily remarked . . .

(2) A series of anonymous publications purporting to be written by members of the University, *but which* are in no way sanctioned by the University itself . . .

(3) A house built in frosty weather *or which* has bad bricks and mortar is likely to be damp.

272. These and similar sentences may be amended by placing a Relative Clause before, or by getting rid of the Relative Clause after, the Conjunction; thus:—

(1) A cautious Scotchman *who* was of a practical matter-of-fact turn of mind *and who* had listened, &c.

This sentence might also have been amended by the simple omission of *and*.

(2) A series of anonymous publications *which* purport to be written by members of the University *but which* are, &c.

or,

A series of anonymous publications purporting to be written by members of the University but in no way sanctioned by, &c.

(3) A house *which* is built in frosty weather, *or which* has bad bricks, &c.

or,

A house built in frosty weather or with bad bricks, &c.

Exercise 105.

Correct the following sentences:—

In the same manner were dæmons by the divine love set over us as a race of beings of a superior order to men, and who with great ease to themselves might regulate our affairs.

They look upon them as blessings showered down from above, and which the more they improve to their own use the greater is [should this be *are*?] their gratitude and piety.

With these menaces he retired at last, but not without muttering some menaces on his side and which, to our great terror, he failed not to put into immediate execution.

To her Mrs. Carlyle would sometimes impart stories of her early days full of fun and freshness, and which the reader must look for in the volumes themselves.

She is said to have lived in a wretched hovel near the New River Head, where scavengers deposited the sweepings of the streets, and which after heavy rain could only be approached by wading knee-deep in mud.

About a mile from the town are the interesting ruins of Sandsfoot Castle standing on a high cliff facing Portland and which, to be seen at its best, should be viewed by moonlight.

He was brought up under her own eye by a tutor of deep erudition but who was totally unfitted for forming the mind.

Athelstane, confident of his strength, and to whom his flatterers at least ascribed great skill in arms, had determined to make him feel the weight of his battle-axe.

A good substitute was found in the maize, the great agricultural staple of both the northern and southern divisions of the American continent, and which after its exportation to the Old World spread so rapidly as to suggest the idea of its being indigenous to it.

In this fight he took the French king and his son prisoner and whom he treated with great respect.

He adopted Trajan, then about forty years of age, and who commanded a powerful army in Lower Germany.

A woman of exemplary character and who, with her family, has been for more than thirty years a tenant of the same house in this neighbourhood, has a husband who is entirely and permanently incapacitated for work.

Most of the castles built after the reign of Henry I., and which had sometimes served as mere dens of robbers, were afterwards destroyed under Henry II.

Even a peer of the realm with unblushing effrontery, and who will probably be brought to the bar of the House for breach of privilege, has openly canvassed votes.

It is indeed the essential quality of a gentleman, and which no man, who ever was great in the field, can possibly be without.

To his inexpressible delight he beheld a sail at a very little distance, and which luckily seemed to be making towards him.

A gentleman on board, and who was in my situation, rescued me from his hands.

The Board offer their grateful acknowledgments for the liberal support hitherto so freely extended, and which has so greatly contributed to this satisfactory result.

It was feared that the untimely death of the surgeon to the hospital, occurring as it did so very shortly after its opening, and to whose untiring energy the institution mainly owes its existence, might seriously affect its future prospects and position.

His having been with Lorenzo at the time of his death, and who had wished to confess to him, raised him prodigiously in the opinion of all those who had been the admirers of the prince.

Such are a few of the many paradoxes one could cite from his writings, and which are now before me.

These delusions become so powerful that their authority over the reasoning faculty is absolute, and from which there is no appeal.

We are in an age of weak beliefs, and in which such belief as men have is more determined by their wish to believe than by any mental appreciation of evidence.

This is a violation of the principles of religious liberty, and which we believe will provoke much resistance.

The house long in the possession of the Berkeley family, and which was inhabited by Colonel Berkeley, was at Spring Gardens.

He is a dark-complexioned [omit *complexioned*] gentleman, with a black military-looking moustache thirty-eight years of age [If the moustache is thirty-eight years old, how old is the man?], and who lives in a secluded little studio out Chelsea way.

The visitors then adjourned for tea, which was kindly provided by the teachers of the school, and to whom a hearty vote of thanks was accorded. [*Accorded* and *hearty* are tautological, as *accorded* is from the Latin *cor, cordis*, the heart.]

I expect [find a better word] that it is caused through nervousness as much as possible, and for which you can do nothing more.

Omission of Relatives.

273. A Relative Pronoun governed in the Objective Case by a Verb may be omitted; as

We speak that [which] we do know and testify that [which] we have seen.

Regions [that] Cæsar never knew
Thy posterity shall sway.

The flinty couch [that] we now must share
Shall seem with down of eider filled.

That mercy [which] I to others show,
That mercy show to me.

A Relative Pronoun governed in the Objective Case by a Preposition may also be omitted; as

Have you brought the thing [that] I sent you for?

But the omission of the Relative throws the Preposition to the end of the sentence, and this we have already seen (Par. 267) is undesirable. Indeed, careful writers of prose rarely omit the Relative under any circumstances.

274. Our older writers often omitted a Relative in the Nominative Case; as

I have a brother [who] is condemned to die.—*Shakespeare.*

I have a mind [which] presages me such thrift
That I should questionless be fortunate.—*Shakespeare.*

It is not growing like a tree
In bulk [that] doth make men better be.—*Ben Jonson.*

In this 'tis God [that] directs, in that 'tis man.—*Pope.*

275. But it may be said that now only slovenly writers omit a Relative in the Nominative Case.

276. Furthermore, the Relative should always be expressed when its omission would also involve the omission of a Preposition; as

In the circumstances [in which] he now found himself there seemed no room for hope.

Exercise 106.

Supply the omitted Relatives.

Thy honourable metal may be wrought
From that it is disposed.

And, that is worse, the Lords of Ross are fled.

In war was never lion raged more fierce.

What wreck discern you in me
Deserves your pity?

You are one of those
Would have him wed again.

And they are envious term thee parasite.

Off with his head,
And rear it in the place your father's stands.

Declare the cause
My father, Earl of Cambridge, lost his head.

And being frank she leads thee to these are free.
To me you cannot reach you play the spaniel.
What should I do I do not?
He has a genius would prompt him to better things.
On the plan Mr. Burke was writing he might have written on.
In the situation England now is it is impossible she can increase in money.

Be that thou know'st thou art, and then thou art
As great as that thou fear'st.

But all I hear
Is the north-wind drear,
And all I see are the waves.

'Tis not the trial of a woman's war,
The bitter clamour of two eager tongues,
Can arbitrate between us.

Our nearness to the king in love
Is near the hate of those love not the king.

There lies
Two kinsmen digged their graves with weeping eyes.

I have no name, no title,
No, not that name was given me at the font.

I'll lay
A plot shall show us all a merry day.

Have I no friend will rid me of this living fear?

I have words to speak in thine ear will make thee dumb.

We'll put on those shall praise your excellence.

Provided . . . that he do record a gift,
Here in this court, of all he dies possessed
Unto his son Lorenzo and his daughter.

Pronoun before Noun.

277. A Pronoun is sometimes placed before the Noun for which it stands; as

Slinging *their* bows behind *them*, his *archers* betook themselves to the axes with which they had been provided.

278. When the Noun follows closely after the Pronoun there is not much objection to this inversion of the natural order, but ambiguity may result from it; as

In order that *they* [who?] might not be hampered he told his men to kill their prisoners.

279. Generally speaking, there is nothing to be gained by putting the Pronoun before the Noun.

Exercise 107.

Place the Nouns and Pronouns in the natural order.

Though she dwelt in a distant part of the kingdom, the horrors of war had been brought home to Joan.

One day when she was alone, tending her father's flock, Joan thought she heard . . .

As soon as they had finished their repast the young people rose from the table to close the festivities of the day with dancing.

After she came of age the Aztec maiden was treated by her parents with great tenderness.

Verona still boasts her amphitheatre and his native Vicenza is adorned by the classic architecture of Palladio.

This change, though mainly owing to their own violence, excited no small indignation in the minds of the reformers.

At one time, seeing his forces wavering, the Earl of Warwick dismounted, stabbed his horse in their presence and swore to live or die with them.

After he had been reigning some time a coolness sprang up between Edward and Warwick.

Soon after his master's death in 1441 Caxton went abroad.

After his father's death one of the Paston correspondents wrote to him several times before he heard that he was dead.

Writing to her husband, who was lying ill in the capital, Mrs. Margaret Paston says . . .

As he was getting off his horse Sir Humphrey was struck on the head with 'an edged tool.'

Writing to her cousin John Paston about a husband who was proposed for his sister, Elizabeth Clare says . . .

VERBS.

Read again Pars. 66–74, *and work again Ex.* 44–50.

Agreement.

Exercise 108.

Correct the following sentences:—

Neither the artist nor the biographer seem to have any clear conception of the boundaries which separate impudence from wit.

Ne'er man a more industrious spouse possessed,
Ne'er children in a mother was more blessed.

Everyone of these letters are in my name.

The continual succession of the small craft, like the frequent repetition of all things which have nothing in them great, beautiful, or admirable, tire the eye and give us distaste and aversion instead of pleasure.

The orders for the second tack was given and obeyed with much more alacrity than those had been for the first. [The orders were not *given* with more alacrity.]

Neither of these gentlemen are kindly disposed to this country.

Does the misery, crime, and insanity produced by excessive drinking grow less?

His voice and manner was studiously calm.

Neither Henrietta nor Louisa nor Charles Hayter nor Captain Wentworth were there.

An entirely fresh selection of representative extracts have been made.

His spirit and method was divine.

Neither Swinburne nor the bard of the sunflower and the lily have yet reached such a point.

That is not surprising when the number of locomotives are considered.

Mr. J. M. asked whether the wife of Mr. A., accompanied by Mr. B., on visiting Tullamore prison on Monday, April 1, were not allowed to see Mr. A.

The conduct of the firemen deserve all praise.

Neither were conscious of the nature of that sentiment.

The lack of beauty, fashion, and elegance disappoint the stranger.

Neither Beauty nor her mistress were to be taken in.

Neither of the preceptresses were better skilled.

We cannot say that the extent of his duties at all surprise us.

It is not the remembrance of its brightest days that are now a solace to my heart.

The works of Flavius Josephus, to which is added three dissertations.

He did not know where I or the girl were.

A selection of spring dresses are to hand.

A profusion of white waistcoats were to be observed among the male members of the choir.

The resemblance in the cases are so remarkable as to give grounds . . .

The learned judge said that neither of the parties were entitled to much sympathy.

We have wiped away the drops which sacred pity have engendered.

A comparison of the materials which Defoe worked up into the 'Life and Adventures of Robinson Crusoe' clearly prove that . . .

There everybody who is anybody, down to the very schoolboys, wear a uniform.

Jones with a number of other men were engaged.

In this quiet burial-ground lie many a gallant officer.

The use of terms generally received and employed by accredited writers on the subject of agriculture are to be recommended.

But the temper as well as knowledge of a modern historian require a more sober and accurate language.

Magnus with four thousand of his supposed accomplices were put to death.

Confiscation, exile, or simple death were esteemed uncommon instances of his lenity.

Everyone of the words which we have quoted were wrong. Neither of them are used now.

When a man or woman find that a knot is tied . . .

Nothing but the sincerity of the speakers save their meetings from ridicule.

A very useful lesson has been taught to those who imagine that the clearance of week-day traffic from the streets leave the latter at their disposal for a game of pandemonium. [Vulgarity is only one of the many faults of this sentence.]

In these words lie the secret.

Neither of them are remarkable for precision.

Nobody, I presume, but kings say . . .

A virtuous and good Turk or heathen are more acceptable . . .

Whatever mortal men perfection name
Thou in an infinite degree does claim.

That night everyone of the boat's crew save Amyas were down with raging fever.

Every line of his poems and songs were like thumps on his own anvil.

In this composition neither of the arms cross the body.

280. A Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Number and Person. A Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person. When, therefore, the Subject is a Relative Pronoun, the Verb agrees with the Antecedent in Number and Person; as

Sing. No. 1st Pers.	*I*		*love*	
,, 2nd ,,	*Thou*		*lovest*	
,, 3rd ,,	*He*	who	*loves*	the man will gladly help him.
Plur. No. 1st Pers.	*We*		*love*	
,, 2nd ,,	*You*		*love*	
,, 3rd ,,	*They*		*love*	

The sentence

And many a holy text around she strews
That *teach* the rustic moralist to die,

violates this rule; *teach* being Plural, while *that*, like its Antecedent *text*, is Singular.

281. Both the following sentences are correct:—

(1) This is the only one of the books that *is* worth reading.
(2) Bring me one of the books that *are* on the table.

In the first sentence the Antecedent is *one*—'Of the books this is the only one that is worth reading.'

In the second sentence the Antecedent is *books*—'Of the books that are on the table bring me one.'

282. Both the following sentences are incorrect:—

(1) This is one of the most important cases that *has* been tried there yet.

(2) There is not one of his writings that *do* not bear the mark of genius.

In the first sentence the Antecedent is *cases*—'Of the cases that have been tried there yet this is one of the most important.'

In the second sentence the Antecedent is *one*—'Of his writings there is not one that does not bear the mark of genius.'

Exercise 109.

Correct the following sentences:—

(*a*) Many a man who trust in their riches are doomed to disappointment.

The man or the woman who do not work hard will be dismissed.

Neither the eloquence nor the logic that mark his discourses receive their due attention.

O Thou my voice inspire,
Who touched Isaiah's hallowed lips with fire.

(*b*) My room is one of those that overlooks the garden.

She is the only one of the girls that are really earnest in their efforts.

This is one of the many streets in the town that is a disgrace to the authorities.

Sir Theodore was one of the few South Sea directors who (though he lost considerably) did not lose his character.

Spenser is one of the poets that adorns 'the spacious times of great Elizabeth.'

There is not one of his poems that are not worthy of careful study.

Carbon is one of the substances that is difficult to fuse.

Iron is not the only one of the metals that are more useful than precious.

His book is one of the best that has been written on the subject.

He has written one of the best manuals that has been produced for years.

Scott is one of the greatest novelists that has appeared in this country.

Chaucer is the one of our great poets that come first in point of time.

I am one of those who is unable to appreciate his merits.

This is one of the first things that opens your eyes to the state of affairs.

283. Grammarians are divided as to the correctness of sentences like the following:—

Neither the captain nor the sailors *were* saved.
Either he or I *is* in the wrong.
Those are far more able to help your son than either you or I *are*.

284. Cobbett was no grammarian, but in dealing with this point he shows the strong common-sense that often characterises his writings. He says:—

'If Nominatives of different Numbers [separated by *or* or *nor*] present themselves, we must not give them a Verb which disagrees with either the one or the other. We must not say,

Neither the halter nor the bayonets *are* sufficient to prevent us from obtaining our rights;

we must avoid this bad grammar by using a different form of words; as

We are to be prevented from obtaining our rights by neither the halter nor the bayonets.

And why should we wish to write bad grammar if we can express our meaning in good grammar?'—*Grammar*, § 242.

285. Cobbett's remark applies to Nominatives of different Persons as well as to Nominatives of different Numbers.

286. The sentences given in Par. 283 may be re-cast; thus:—

The captain and the sailors were lost.
He is in the wrong or I am.
You and I are far less able than they to help your son.

Exercise 110.

Re-cast the following sentences:—

Neither poverty nor other difficulties was able to dismay him.

We do not yet know whether one or several were concerned in the business.

The cares of life or the deceitfulness of riches have choked the seeds of virtue.

Neither the king nor his ministers deserve to be praised.
He or I are certain to come.
You or he are diligent in study.
James or I am willing to help you.
Neither the general nor the soldiers were confident of victory.
Either he or I am coming.
Neither we nor John was late.
I or he am in the wrong.
He or you is in the wrong.
Either the prior or thou has made some singular alterations.
Nothing which he or you have said bears on the question.

287. The sentences

There *is* ten shillings in my purse,

and

There *are* ten shillings in my purse,

are both correct, but they differ in meaning. The first is concerned only with the *amount of money*, the second with the kind and number of *coins*.

288. As in the first sentence, a Singular Verb is generally used with Plural names of weights, measures, and values when assertions are made about the *whole* and not about the *units*.

289. Similarly, a Singular Verb is employed with a Plural Noun used as the title of a book; as

'English Bards and Scotch Reviewers' was the first of Byron's works that showed real power.

Exercise 111.

Correct the following:—

'The Canterbury Tales' are a collection of poems by Chaucer.
Dryden's 'Absalom and Achitophel' were directed against the enemies of the court.
Fuller's 'Worthies of England' are greatly esteemed.
'The Two Gentlemen of Verona' were written by Shakespeare.
'Gulliver's Travels' are a bitter satire.
A thousand pounds are more than I can afford.
There were two pence in the child's pocket.
Three shillings are more than that book is worth.
Eleven yards of the cloth are not enough to make a frock.

Twenty minutes were wasted in saddling the horses.
Thirty miles are more than I can walk.
Two gallons are what the jar will hold.
Fifty or sixty pounds were the usual load for a man.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods.

290. There seems at present a tendency to allow the Subjunctive Mood to fall into disuse. All who value clearness should strive against this tendency, for the use of the Subjunctive enables us to express certain shades of meaning that we could not otherwise express so well. Note, for example, the distinction in meaning between the following sentences:—

Subjunctive Mood.—If my brother *were* at the door I would not open it.
Indicative Mood.—If my brother *is* at the door I will not open it.

The first sentence implies that my brother is not at the door and is not likely to be there.

The second implies either that he is certainly at the door or that he is likely to be there.

291. The Indicative mood is used

(1) In a simple statement of fact; as

Gold *is* more precious than iron.

(2) In a hypothetical statement of fact; as

Though gold *is* more precious than iron, iron is more useful than gold.

(3) In a hypothetical statement of something that is assumed to be fact; as

If the music *is* difficult it is also beautiful.

292. The Subjunctive Mood is used when we are making, not a simple or hypothetical statement of fact or of something assumed to be fact, but when we are speaking of something which is only thought of; as when we are expressing

(1) A condition; as

If I *were* tired I should rest.

(2) A wish; as

Thy kingdom *come*.

(3) A purpose; as

Judge not that ye *be* not *judged*.

Exercise 112.

Pick out the Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood.

So [if] thou be happy I am content.
If it were so, it was a grievous fault.
He is gracious if he be observed.
Though he slay me, yet will I trust him.
Though hand join in hand, the wicked shall not go unpunished.
Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.
Unless he behave better, he will be punished.
You must obey the laws, however you dislike them.

The tear-drop who can blame,
Though it dim the veteran's aim?

Had she lived a twelvemonth more
She had not died to-day.

If she love me (this believe)
I will die ere she shall grieve.

Oh, that it were with me as in the days that are past.
See that my room be got ready for me at once.
I would [=wish] I were a bird.
We wish it were fine.
Hallowed be Thy Name.
Beware lest you fall.
Strive that you fail not.
Eat lest you faint.
Drink that you thirst not.
If to drink so many hogsheads is to be hospitable, we do not contend for the fame of that virtue.

Exercise 113.

Give the Mood of each Verb printed in italics.

Though you *took* his life, bury him as a prince.
Though gods they *were*, as men they died.
My master said that if I *was* not clever I was not lazy.
If I *were* clever I should gain prizes.
Though Tom *is* young, he is tall.
Though Tom *were* younger, he would still be too old for an infant school.
If at the close of the holiday everybody *was* tired, everybody was happy.
If it *be* true that war is about to break out, there is much misery before us.

Though the law *is* severe, we must obey it.
If the law *be* severe, we must try to get it changed.

If I *am* right, oh teach my heart
Still in the right to stay;
If I *am* wrong, Thy grace impart
To find the better way.

Mean though I *am*, not wholly so,
Since quickened by Thy breath.

293. The Subjunctive Mood, being the Mood of doubt, naturally comes after such words as *if*, *though*, *unless*, *except*, *lest*, *whether*, and *that*. It does not, however, follow that the Verb coming after these words is certain to be in the Subjunctive Mood; it may be in the Indicative Mood.

Subjunctive Mood.—If my father *were* in the house he would agree with me.

Indicative Mood.—If my father *is* in the house he will agree with me.

In the first sentence, my father's being in the house is a matter of doubt; in the second, it is assumed that he is there.

Subjunctive Mood.—Though the vase *were made* of steel, the careless servant would break it.

Indicative Mood.—Though the vase *was made* of steel, the careless servant broke it.

In the first sentence, we speak of a vase that *might be*, in the second, we speak of one that *was*, made of steel.

Subjunctive Mood.—Whether the prisoner *be* innocent is uncertain.

Indicative Mood.—Whether the prisoner *is* innocent or guilty, he deserves pity.

294. In the following sentences the Subjunctive is used for the Indicative:—

(1) If there *were* a warm place in his frosty heart, his son occupied it.

In the first clause, there is a hypothetical statement of fact and the Indicative should therefore have been used. The Subjunctive would be correct if we altered the second Verb; thus:—

If there *were* a warm place in his frosty heart, his son *would occupy* it.

(2) On hearing the title above mentioned, there is not an English reader who would not suppose that it *were* a critical tract.

The Noun Clause is a simple statement of what the reader would suppose. The Indicative *was* should therefore have been used.

(3) Charming also was Mr. Coffin of Portledge, though he *were* a little proud and stately.

Though is here followed by a simple statement; *was*, therefore, should be substituted for *were*.

295. In the following sentences the Indicative is used for the Subjunctive:—

(1) I wish I *was* a baby and this *was* a tree-top.
(2) *Was* I [should be *were I* or *if I were*] an absolute prince, I would appoint able judges . . .

Exercise 114.

Correct the following sentences:—

Was your son called Judas, the sordid and treacherous idea so inseparable from the name would have accompanied him through life like his shadow.

If he do feel sorry he will show it in his actions.

No one should travel in that country unless he be prepared for dirt and discomfort.

Was I in your place I would act differently.

Tell him to be careful lest he breaks the rules.

Though he be high he has respect unto the lowly.

If he was your friend he would defend you.

If the boy desire to get on he does not use the right means.

Though honesty be the best policy some people do not practise it.

You shall soon see whether I be master.

If thou have understanding hear this.

Though I be absent from you in the flesh I am present with you in the spirit.

Who but must laugh if such a man there be?

Take heed lest passion sways thy judgment.

I do not care whether John or William come.

If he were still of the same mind I will help him.

If Clive were victorious at Plassey it was not through numbers.

If he have satisfied me who am most concerned why should you grumble?

It ought to affect him if he have been the cause of the failure.

Though the field were badly tilled it produced a good crop.

Parties would become complicated if he obtains any following.

Though eating be necessary, man should not over-eat.

Though he be mighty he is gentle.

If he promises he would certainly perform.

Despise no condition lest it becomes your own.

Oh that his heart was tender.

His behaviour made it reasonable to suppose that he were guilty.

Shall *and* will.

296. The Future Tense is used in two ways[1] (called by Dr. Latham the Predictive and the Promissive).

297. In the **Predictive** form, *shall* is the Auxiliary of the First Person, *will* of the Second and Third Persons; thus:—

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I *shall* write.	We *shall* write.
2. Thou *wilt* write.	You *will* write.
3. He *will* write.	They *will* write.

298. In the **Promissive** form, *will* is the Auxiliary of the First Person, *shall* of the Second and Third Persons; thus:

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I *will* write.	We *will* write.
2. Thou *shalt* write.	You *shall* write.
3. He *shall* write.	They *shall* write.

299. The Predictive form is used in simple assertions of futurity; as

I *shall* have occasion to try your obedience this very evening.

Our meeting *will* be so formal and so like a thing of business that I *shall* find no room for friendship or esteem.

You *will* see a pair of large horns over the door; that's the sign.

[1] In a very remarkable trial in Massachusetts—that of Abner Rogers for the murder of Charles Lincoln—much importance was attached to the use, by the prisoner, of one auxiliary or the other. The counsel appeared cleverly to appreciate the difference. A witness, Warren B. Parke, who was sent to search Rogers after the murder, gave his evidence thus: 'He (Rogers) said, "I have fixed the warden, and I'*ll* have a rope round my neck to-night." On the strength of what he said, I took his suspenders [braces] from him.' Cross-examined: 'His words were "I *will* have a rope," not "I *shall* have a rope." I am sure that the word was *will* and not *shall*.' Mr. Parker, Counsel for the Commonwealth, in commenting on the speech, says: 'It shows a contemplation of murder and suicide, a designed voluntary escape from the penalties of the law, and a consciousness of the malignity and criminality of his actions.' The defence set up was insanity, and on that ground the prisoner was acquitted.—Sir E. W. Head, '*Shall*' *and* '*Will*,' p. 17.

300. The Promissive form shows determination on the part of the speaker. It is therefore used in expressing commands, threats, promises, prophecies, and the like; as

Revenge from some baleful corner *shall* level a tale of dishonour at thee which no innocence of heart nor integrity of conduct *shall* set right. The fortunes of thy house *shall* totter; thy character, which led the way to them, *shall* bleed on every side of it. . , Cruelty and cowardice . . . *shall* strike together at thy infirmities and thy mistakes.

You may be a Darby, but I *will* be no Joan, I promise you.

301. In subordinate clauses, after *when*, *if*, *though*, and other words, *shall* is used for the three Persons; as

When he *shall* appear we shall be like him.

As long as mankind *shall* continue to bestow more liberal applause on their destroyers than on their benefactors, the thirst for military glory will ever be the vice of the most exalted characters.

302. '*Would* and *should* follow the rules of *shall* and *will* when employed in parallel circumstances: *I should*, *you would*, *he would* express contingent futurity; *I would*, *you would*, *he would* signify past or recorded determination of the subject; *I should*, *you should*, *he should* express that the subject is controlled by some other power.'—BAIN, *A Higher English Grammar*, p. 174.

Examples.

1. I *should*[1] rest if I were tired.
You *would* rest if you were tired.
He *would* rest if he were tired.

2. I *would*
You *would*
He *would*
} go home in spite of all opposition.

3. He decided that { I / you / he } *should* be promoted.

[1] A pupil in a quiet boarding-school in Pennsylvania displayed some time since no small degree of industry in collecting autographs of distinguished writers. Mr. J. R. Lowell was one of the number addressed. The address to him was, substantially, 'I would be very much obliged for your autograph.' The response contained a lesson that many besides the ambitious pupil have not learned: 'Pray do not say hereafter, "I would be obliged." If you would be obliged, be obliged and be done with it. Say, "I should be obliged," and oblige yours truly James Russell Lowell.'

Exercise 115.

(a) *Write sentences illustrating the various uses of* **shall** *and* **will** *and of* **should** *and* **would**, *as explained in Pars.* 299-302.

Correct the following sentences:—

I am able to devote as much time and attention to other subjects as I will be under the necessity of doing next winter.

Compel me to retire and I should be fallen indeed; I would feel myself blighted in the eyes of all my acquaintance; I would never more lift up my face in society; I would bury myself in the oblivion of shame and solitude; I would hide me from the world; I would be overpowered by the feelings of my own disgrace; the torments of self-reflection would pursue me.

A countryman, telling us what he had seen, remarked that if the conflagration went on as it had begun we would have, as our next season's employment, the Old Town Hall of Edinburgh to rebuild.

Let the British government continue the protection of last year and we will be all right.

In a very short time we will probably find ourselves on a new footing.

The time is coming when we will have to dig deeper in search of both coals and metallic ores.

I feel assured that I will not have the misfortune to find conflicting opinions held by one so enlightened as your Excellency.

He ought to have known we would be ruined.

They say I will find such portraits in all the cottages of the peasants through the village.

The National Assembly dare not avenge them as they should lose the favour of the intoxicated people.

Participial Phrases.

303. The use of Participles in forming compound Tenses is too simple to need exposition, but the use of Participles in forming qualifying phrases needs some attention.

304. Participial Phrases employed with discretion are aids to the attainment of vigour and clearness. When there are several Verbs in a sentence, the attention of the reader is divided between them as each one is predicative, and there may at first be some doubt which is the principal Predicate; but when Participles are substituted for some of the Verbs, attention is concentrated on the Verbs that remain. Note how the following sentences would be weakened by the absence of the Participles:—

With Participles.	*Without Participles.*
He was in the right when, *being* in opposition, he maintained that no peace ought to be made with Spain . . . He was in the right when, *being* in office, he silently acquiesced in a treaty with Spain.	He was right when he was in opposition and maintained that no peace ought to be made with Spain . . . He was right when he was in office and silently acquiesced in a treaty with Spain. [The alteration affects the meaning as well as the style. The original sentence does not say what the altered sentence does, that the fact of being in opposition or in office was right.]
Backed by the middle class of Englishmen, Pitt forced an unwilling Cabinet and an unwilling oligarchy to admit him to an ample share of power.	Pitt was backed by the middle class of Englishmen, and he was thus able to force an unwilling Cabinet, &c.
After a war of about forty years, *undertaken* by the most stupid, *maintained* by the most dissolute, and *terminated* by the most timid of all the emperors, the far greater part of the island submitted to the Roman yoke.	After a war of about forty years, which was undertaken by the most stupid of all the emperors, which was maintained by the most dissolute of them, and which was terminated by the most timid of them, the far greater part, &c.
Domitian, *confined* to his palace, felt the terrors which he inspired.	Domitian was confined to his palace, and he felt the terrors which he inspired.

Exercise 116.

Re-write the following sentences, using Participles for the Verbs printed in italics :—

As they still *preserved* the prejudices after they had lost the virtues of their ancestors, they affected to despise the unpolished manners of the Roman conquerors.

The slaves consisted for the most part of barbarian captives, who *had been taken* in thousands by the chance of war, who *had been purchased* at a vile price, who *had been accustomed* to a life of independence, and [who were] impatient to break and to revenge their fetters.

The people *were terrified* by the sight of some houses in flames, and they yielded with a sigh.

The king *was abandoned* by his friends and destroyed by his enemies.

The sailors *were reduced* to the last extremity of hunger and were too weak to move.

The garrison *saw* no hope of relief, and surrendered.

The army of the Great King consisted of 120,000 horse who *were clothed* in complete armour of steel.

Such are the circumstances of this ostentatious and improbable relation, which *was dictated*, as it too plainly appears, by the vanity of the monarch; which *was adorned* by the unblushing servility of his flatterers; and which *was received* without contradiction by a distant and obsequious senate.

The inexperienced youth, *who was influenced* by his mother's counsels and perhaps by his own fears, deserted the bravest troops and the fairest prospect of victory; and after *he had consumed* in Mesopotamia an inactive and inglorious summer he led back to Antioch an army *which was diminished* by sickness and *which was provoked* by disappointment.

The Persians, *who were* long since *civilised* and *corrupted*, were very far from possessing the martial independence and the intrepid hardness both of mind and body which have rendered the northern barbarians masters of the world.

305. Take care that every Participial Phrase qualifies some Noun or Pronoun. The following sentences are incorrect:—

(1) Being tired with his long journey, we had to take a walk alone.

We is the only word that the Participial Phrase, *being tired with his long journey*, can qualify, but we could not be tired with his journey. Insert *he* before *being*.

(2) Being a member of the volunteer corps, a detachment followed the hearse.

(3) Walking one winter's day across the park, half a dozen swans flew across the sky.

Exercise 117.

Correct the following sentences :—[1]

Being one of the principal churches in Sydney, it was not unnatural to look for some degree of intelligence in the preaching department.

Having indignantly refused to relinquish her profligate associates, the Curé of St. Sulpice declined administering the sacrament.

Having been decorated with the cross of the legion of honour, a company

[1] Taken, like those in the next Exercise, chiefly from Hodgson's *Errors in the Use of English.*

of French soldiers, with muffled drums, formed part of the funeral procession and fired a salute over the grave.

Gliding along its passages, many a word was uttered.

Conversing one day with Beecher on the subject of the war, he said: 'Our triumph is producing a speedier effect upon you than upon ourselves.'

Looking back on the affair after the lapse of years, the chief mistake seems to have been the simultaneity of the new ecclesiastical arrangement and the advent of the Cardinal Archbishop.

Having just now spoken rather of the disciples than of the master, this opportunity may be taken to say that, &c.

Having perceived the weakness of his poems upon the Franco-German war, they now re-appear to us under new titles and largely pruned or otherwise remodelled.

Having thus asserted his prerogative and put on his clothes with the help of a valet, the count, with my nephew and me, were introduced by his son, and received with his usual style of rustic civility.

Sir Charles Wetherell addressed the House [of Lords] for three hours . . . when, being fatigued by his exertions, their lordships adjourned to the following day.

Being exceedingly fond of birds, an aviary is always to be found in the grounds.

Having left unguarded the key of his escritoire as if through forgetfulness, the thief rushed towards the gold.

Speaking with a poor woman about the daughter of her neighbour, . . . she said, 'I reckon,' &c.

For being now without a father's protection, and under the sanctuary of his roof, St. John Aylott . . . was only careful, &c.

Replying in the affirmative, the coffin was again closed.

Considering it merely in that light, it is the most ancient and the most curious memorial of the early history of mankind.

Having vainly attempted to do this in other ways, it was resolved at last to send some superior diplomatist.

The witness was asked to describe what he saw. Hesitating how to begin, the counsel grew impatient.

His success was almost certain, being supported by the powerful influence of Lord B.

Having already disposed of the first part of the case, the second can be passed over quickly.

306. A Noun or Pronoun in the Possessive Case, being in the nature of an Adjective, cannot be qualified by a Participle or Participial Phrase. The following sentence is incorrect:—

His life hangs upon a thread, having received a severe sabre-thrust.

The sentence reads as if his life or a thread had received a severe sabre-thrust. Insert *he* and re-arrange thus:—

He having received a severe sabre-thrust, his life hangs upon a thread.

Exercise 118.

Correct the following sentences:—

Amazed at the alteration in his manner, every sentence that he uttered increased her embarrassment.

His career was cut short in the youth of his popularity having been killed in a duel by Aaron Burr.

Not having seen them for some years, her arrival occasioned considerable excitement.

Vested with a dignity which humanity has never possessed in any other person, this aggravation in his case was unparalleled.

A young hunter fell in love with a beautiful girl, whom he sought for his wife, and being the pride of his tribe both for swiftness in the race and for courage in war, his suit was accepted by her father, &c.

Being early killed, I sent a party in search of his mangled body.

Entering the factory gate, the evidence offered his visual organs might lead, &c.

But official gentlemen then were even more official than they are now; and fancying that every man in office was a great man, every one out of it a small one, their especial contempt was reserved for a public writer.

This copy is now in my possession, having purchased it at the sale of his Grace's library, and I need not add that I esteem it as one of my greatest literary treasures.

Looking back, the happiness of my young life is associated with her; looking forward, I have comfort and satisfaction in the hope of rejoining dear grandmamma.

When preparing for his examinations, I had sometimes to rise from my own bed to urge him to retire to his.

Preaching on one occasion in a village chapel, a pious old woman said to him, &c.

Baffled, but not dismayed, his future course was yet doubtful.

Lying seriously ill, my mother hastened to my lodgings.

Living alone in the great city, his friends knew little of his doings.

Being asked for my help, only one answer was possible.

Past Tense and Perfect Participle.

307. Persons whose mother-tongue is English are not likely to confound the Past Tense and the Perfect (or Past) Participle

in sentences that are not elliptical, but in sentences that are elliptical mistakes often occur.

Examples.

(1) After having duly wiped her nose with her coloured handkerchief and shook off the particles of snuff, she resumed.

Having is understood in the second phrase, and the Perfect Participle *shaken* should therefore be used instead of the Past Tense *shook*.

(2) It had been found that the victim had devoured a dozen apples, drank [had drunk] a pint or more of ice water, ate [had eaten] a cocoanut or two, and then topped off with the cucumber.

In the preceding sentences the wrong part of the principal Verb is expressed; in the following examples the wrong part is understood:—

(3) I spoke just as you had.

Insert *spoken* after *had*. We could have said

I acted just as you had

because the part of the Verb understood is the same in form as the part expressed.

(4) He will not in future be able to act as he has in the past.

Act, the part expressed, will not do after *has*; *acted* must therefore be inserted there.

(5) That is a plan which has always and must always fail.

Insert *failed* after the first *always*.

(6) Tom may have and in fact did behave shabbily.

Insert *behaved* after *have*.

Exercise 119.

Correct the following sentences:—

Now that we so long have slept together, rose at the same moment . . .
He said some thief had taken his hat and ran away with it.
The reward has already or soon will be paid.
Their intentions might and probably were good.
This may or has been said.
Honesty of purpose is the only power that ever has or ever will sustain a man in such a situation.
Dishonesty never has and never can be a satisfactory substitute.
I wrote home last week; my brother also has.
That is an experiment which has hitherto, and will in the future fail.

He always has and always will be a troublesome boy to manage.
No one can help me as she has.
You must endure as you have in the past.
He does not write as often to me as I have to him.
That is a question which no one has yet answered and which perhaps no one ever will.
Attempting, as his brother had, to swim across the river he was nearly drowned.
I never have and never will consent to sink my principles.
He had not and he could not keep his promises.

Perfect Infinitive after a Past Tense.

308. After a Past Tense the Perfect of the Infinitive is often used for the Indefinite; as

Mr. Speaker, I *expected* from the former language and positive promises of the noble lord and the Right Honourable the Chancellor of the Exchequer *to have seen* the bank paying in gold and silver.

'This is House of Commons language. Avoid it. . . . "I expected *to see*" to be sure and not "to have seen," because the *have seen* carries your act of seeing back beyond the period within which it is supposed to have been expected to take place.'—COBBETT, *Grammar*, § 259.

309. Cobbett's explanation suggests the rule. When the Infinitive refers to a time earlier than that referred to by the Finite Verb, the Perfect Infinitive should be used; as

Present of Finite Verb.—He is believed to have died last year.
Past of Finite Verb.—He *was believed to have died* last year.

310. Compare the following sentences (all correct):—

He appears to be running.
He appeared to be running.
He appears to have been running.
He appeared to have been running.

311. Even when the Infinitive does not refer to an earlier time than the Finite Verb the Perfect form of the Infinitive is used if the Finite Verb has no distinctive form for the Past; as

Present.	*Past.*
He ought to go.	He ought to have gone.
He must be tired.	He must have been tired.
He need not write.	He need not have written.

Exercise 120.

Correct the following sentences :—

I expected to have ploughed my land last Monday.
I called on him and wished to have submitted my manuscript to him.
They, supposing him to have been in the company, went a day's journey.
He would have been able to have celebrated his triumph fitly.
I meant to have learned my lessons thoroughly.
His very looks would have been sufficient to have shown that he was guilty.
I intended to have called on you last week
Who would have thought it possible to have received a reply from Australia so soon?
He had deserved to have been whipped.
The mistress had resolved to have taken the servants with her.
It would have been better to have waited.
I intended to have insisted on this.
It would have been unkind to have refused help when it could have been rendered so easily.
The chief result of such exertions would have been to have destroyed his health.
It must have been pleasant to have listened to him.
It would have been difficult for him to have kept his place.
I had hoped never to have suffered another such disappointment.

The Right Tenses.

312. When Verbs refer to different times, the Tense forms should, as far as possible, be different also; as

Present Indefinite.—I *see* my brother now;
Present Perfect.—I *have seen* him this morning already.
Past Indefinite.—I also *saw* him yesterday,
Past Perfect.—When he *had* just *seen* my sister,
Future.—Whom we *shall see* again next week.
Past Indefinite.—Last night among his fellow-roughs
He *jested, quaffed,* and *swore*. . . .
Present Indefinite.—To-day beneath the foeman's frown
He *stands* in Elgin's place.

313. Dean Alford gives a curious illustration of a serious misunderstanding arising from a mistake in Tense forms.

An important difference in meaning is sometimes made by the wrong or careless use of one of these Tenses for the other. An instance of this occurs

in the English version of the Bible in the beginning of Acts xix. There we read, in the original, that St. Paul, finding certain disciples at Ephesus, asked them, 'Did ye receive the Holy Ghost when ye believed—when ye first became believers?' To this they answered, 'We did not so much as hear whether there were any Holy Ghost.' On which St. Paul asked them, 'Unto what then were ye baptized?' They replied, 'Unto the baptism of John.' Then he explained to them that John's baptism, being only a baptism of repentance, did not bring with it the gift of the Holy Ghost.

In this account all is clear, but the English version, by an unfortunate mistake, has rendered the narrative unintelligible. It has made St. Paul ask the converts, 'Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed?' So far, all would be clear; for they certainly had not, though this does not represent what was said by the Apostle. But it is their answer which obscures the history: 'We have not so much as heard,' they are made to say, 'whether there be any Holy Ghost.' Strange, indeed, that these disciples, who had probably been for years in the Church, should during that time, and up to the time when St. Paul spoke, never have heard of the existence of the Holy Spirit. Render the words accurately, and all is clear.—*The Queen's English*, § 311.

Historical Present.

314. When a past event is described as though it were occurring now, the Tense used is called the **Historical Present.**

Example.

But see Camille Desmoulins, from the Café de Foy, rushing out, sibylline in face; his hair streaming, in each hand a pistol. He springs to a table: the Police satellites are eyeing him; alive they shall not take him! not they alive, him alive. This time he speaks without stammering: 'Friends! shall we die like hunted hares? like sheep hounded into their pinfold! bleating for mercy, where is no mercy, but only a whetted knife? The hour is come; the supreme hour of Frenchman and man; when Oppressors are to try conclusions with Oppressed; and the word is, swift Death, or Deliverance for ever. Let such hour be *well*-come! Us, meseems, one cry only befits: To Arms! Let universal Paris, universal France, as with the throat of the whirlwind, sound only: To Arms!' 'To Arms!' yell responsive the innumerable voices; like one great voice, as of a Demon yelling from the air: for all faces wax fire-eyed, all hearts burn up into madness. In such, or fitter words, does Camille evoke the Elemental Powers in this great moment. Friends, continues Camille, some rallying-sign! Cockades; green ones; the colour of Hope! As with the flight of locusts, these green tree leaves; green ribands from the neighbouring shops; all green things are snatched, and made cockades of. Camille descends from his table, 'stifled

with embraces, wetted with tears;' has a bit of green riband handed him; sticks it in his hat. And now to Curtius' image shop there; to the Boulevards; to the four winds; and rest not till France be on fire.—CARLYLE, *The French Revolution*, bk. V., ch. iv.

315. When the Historical Present is used with skill and moderation it adds vividness to style, making the dead past live again before our eyes; but when the Historical Present is used clumsily or excessively it is a most disagreeable affectation.

Sequence of Tenses.

316. Co-ordinating Conjunctions join the same Tenses; as

Present Indefinite.—Like spectral hounds across the sky
The white clouds *scud* before the storm,
And naked in the howling night
The red-eyed lighthouse *lifts* its form.

Past Indefinite.—God *created* man to be immortal and *made* him to be an image of His own eternity.

Future Indefinite.—Our name *shall be forgotten* in time, and no man *shall have* our works in remembrance, and our life *shall pass* away as the trace of a cloud and *shall be dispersed* as a mist that is driven away with the beams of the sun and overcome with the heat thereof.

317. The Tense of the Verb in a dependent clause varies with the Tense of the Principal Verb; as

I *shall be* at home if you *call*.
I *should be* at home if you *called*.
I *should have been* at home if you *had called*.

318. If the very words of a speaker are considered important or interesting, his speech is generally reported in the First Person. If only the substance of what he says is required, the Third Person is generally employed. Then

Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are changed into Pronouns (or Nouns) of the Third Person.
The Present Tense is changed into the Past.
The *shall* of the Future Tense is changed into *should*.
The *will* of the Future Tense is changed into *would* or *should*.
The Past Tense remains unchanged.
Vocatives are generally dropped.

Examples.

In the First Person.	*In the Third Person.*
I tender *you my* most hearty thanks for the kind and touching welcome which *you have* given *me*.	*He* tendered *them his* most hearty thanks for the kind and touching welcome which *they had* given *him*.
The presence of the conference in *this* town *will* have a favourable influence upon its future action.	The presence of the conference in *that* town *would* have a favourable influence upon its future action.
I find it hard enough to speak without being misunderstood upon English political questions; *I should* despair of it if *I attempted* the task with respect to foreign questions.	*He found* it hard enough to speak without being misunderstood upon English political questions; *he* should despair of it if *he attempted* the task with respect to foreign questions.
I cannot, my lords, I will not join in congratulation on misfortune and disgrace.	*He could* not, *he would* not join in congratulation on misfortune and disgrace.
Tell me not of rights.	*Let them* not tell *him* of rights.

319. A proposition true for all time is stated in the Present Tense even when the rest of the report is in the Past. Note the difference between the following examples:—

Present Tense.	*Past Tense.*
(1) It *is* as true as that *I am* standing *here*.	It *was* as true as that *he was* standing *there*.
(2) It *is* as true as that two sides of a triangle *are* together greater than the third side.	It *was* as true as that two sides of a triangle *are* together greater than the third side.

Exercise 121.

(a) *Correct the following sentences:—*

Yesterday he has lent me his knife, but now I returned it.
I have concluded from the seal that the letter he just received had been from the Lord Chancellor.

The regiment has formerly been famous for its discipline, but this year it was guilty of irregularities.

We have been to the seaside last summer and have met several of our friends there.

Young said that procrastination was the thief of time.

Who first asserted that virtue was its own reward?

His experience proved that there was many a slip 'twixt the cup and the lip.

I should thank you if you would help me.

He was so tired that I was afraid he could not have walked to the end of the journey.

I shall take the first train that I might arrive early.

If you could only wait your success will be certain.

He would work hard if he feels certain of success.

If I know the truth I would tell it you.

If he received your instructions he would have obeyed them.

Be virtuous and you would be happy.

He walks as if he is racing.

When I see him again, I shall have told him many things that happen since I met him last at his own house.

I am sure they have been there and did what is required.

Go and have finished what you have to do.

The next new year's day I shall be at school three years.

The court laid hold on all the opportunities which the weakness or necessities of princes afford it to extend its authority.

His sickness was so great that I often feared he would have died before our arrival.

It would have given me great satisfaction to relieve him from that distressed situation.

I love to work ever since I was a child, but I like also to have had a little play.

He will not go thither in order that he might get some food.

I wish he will come at once.

I should be obliged to him if he will gratify me in that particular.

Ye will not come unto Me that ye might have life.

I have been in London a year and seen the Queen last summer.

We have done no more than it was our duty to have done.

He would have assisted one of his friends if he could do it without injuring the other.

Might it not be expected that he will have defended our authority?

It was a pleasure to have received his approbation.

Him portion'd maids, apprenticed orphans blest,
The young who labour and the old who rest.

I never was so long in company with a girl in my life trying to entertain her and succeed so ill.

When men are intent on cards their faces show far more of their real characters than when they are engaged in conversation.

If I were old enough to be married I am old enough to manage my husband's house.

Had it not been for the strenuous opposition of the people the Stuarts would deprive England of its liberties.

(b) *Select six examples of the Historic Present from any poem, history, or tale.*

(c) *Turn into the Third Person the following extract from the Earl of Chatham's Speech to the House of Lords on the American War of Independence:—*

I cannot, my lords, I will not, join in congratulation on misfortune and disgrace. This, my lords, is a perilous and tremendous moment. It is not a time for adulation; the smoothness of flattery cannot save us in this rugged and awful crisis. It is now necessary to instruct the Throne in the language of truth. We must, if possible, dispel the delusion and darkness which envelop it, and display, in its full danger and genuine colours, the ruin which is brought to our doors.

Can ministers still presume to expect support in their infatuation? Can Parliament be so dead to its dignity and duty as to give its support to measures thus obtruded and forced upon it—measures, my lords, which have reduced this late flourishing empire to scorn and contempt? 'But yesterday, and Britain might have stood against the world: now, none so poor as to do her reverence.'

The people whom we at first despised as rebels, but whom we now acknowledge as enemies, are abetted against us—supplied with every military store, have their interest consulted, and their ambassadors entertained—by our inveterate enemy; and ministers do not, and dare not, interpose with dignity or effect.

Adverbs.

320. The only real difficulty likely to arise in dealing with Adverbs, the difficulty of placing them properly, has been discussed already. Two or three vulgarisms may, however, be mentioned.

In some districts *that* is used for *so* before Adjectives; as

I was *that* ill that I could hardly stand.

321. The Adverb *very* can be used before an Adjective or an Adverb; as

He writes *very* well because he is *very* careful;

but *very* cannot be used before a Participle. We cannot say, for example,

He is *very* influenced by his companions

we must say

He is *very much* influenced.

322. Some words can be used both as Adjectives and as Participles, and are therefore qualified in the one case by *very* and in the other by *very much*; thus:—

I felt *very* tired.

My walk has *very much* tired me.

323. Whether, therefore, *very* may be used before *pleased* depends upon whether *pleased* is an Adjective or a Participle; and there can be no question that *pleased* is a Participle in such a sentence as

He is pleased.

Hence we must say, not

He is *very* pleased,

but

He is *very much* pleased.

PREPOSITIONS.

324. Elaborate rules are sometimes given concerning the Prepositions to be used before and after words; but to one whose mother-tongue is English these rules are really unnecessary, as most of the mistakes that occur in the employment of Prepositions arise from want of care rather than from want of knowledge.

Examples.

(1) The men looked at the subject *in* different points of view.

We look at a subject *from*, not *in* a point.

(2) Regarded *from* this light, his views are disgraceful.

We look at a thing *in*, not *from* the light.

(3) *To* us this practice is considered discreditable.

Is considered *by* us.

325. Perhaps there is no word which has the wrong Preposition after it so often as *different*. We differ *from* a person, therefore our views are different *from*, not *to* his.

The use of *to* after *different* does not prevail among the English-speaking people of America. Mr. J. R. Lowell refers to this in 'My Study Windows.' He says:—

Human nature has a much greater genius for sameness than for originality. . . . The surprising thing is that men have such a taste for this somewhat musty flavour that an Englishman, for example, should feel himself defrauded, nay, even outraged, when he comes over here and finds a people speaking what he admits to be something like English and yet so very different from (*or as he would say* to) those he left at home.

Thackeray invariably wrote *different to*. In 'Henry Esmond' the story is supposed to be told by one of Marlborough's officers, and Thackeray challenged Mr. Lowell to find in the book any word or phrase that violated the usage of Queen Anne's time. Lowell promptly pointed out *different to*, and Thackeray was bound to admit the slip.

326. After *averse* we often find *to*, though strict propriety requires *from*. *Averse* is from the Latin *a-vert-ere*, to turn away, and therefore requires *from* as much as *ad-vert* requires *to*.

327. *Between* is derived from the Anglo-Saxon *be*, by, and *twá*, two, and therefore should be used only when two objects or sets of objects are referred to. Instead of

His proposal is likely to stir up ill-will between the various classes,

say '. . . . among the various classes.'

328. *Between* is like a bridge. See that it be supported at each end. Do not say, for example,

Between each house is a pretty garden.

329. *By* is sometimes wrongly used before a Gerund ; as

Found in High Street, a purse: the owner can have it by applying to A. B.

Say 'on applying,' or 'if he will apply.'

Exercise 122.

Correct the following sentences :—

A large portion of family pride had prompted her to wish becoming the protectress of her orphan niece.

Pius associated Marcus to all the labours of government.

This hospital will be closed for repairs on Saturday, September 1, until Friday, October 5.

He died after going through a similar operation as the emperor's.

There were similar marks as these about the face.

By pushing steadily, nine hundred and ninety-nine people in a thousand will yield to you.

We shall stay two months at England.

I have been to London after having lived at France.

We touched in Queenstown on our way for New York.

He lives in the village of Langum.

You have bestowed your favours to the most deserving persons.

The English were very different then to what they are now.

We were altogether averse to the proposal.

We profit from our experience.

Jack has no resemblance with his brother.

He is resolved on taking a long holiday.

The Romans reduced the world to their own power.

He found no one on whom he could confide.

I differ entirely with you, and I disagree to all your propositions.

The prisoner was acquitted from all blame.

Godwin was reconciled with the king.

The man was accused with theft.

Divide this shilling among Tom and William.

The owner can have it by giving the date when lost.

Michael Angelo planned a totally different façade to the existing one.

In this point of view they seem both equally true.

She will be forced to renounce the church into whose bosom she has long since found rest.

Except to those who have really seen the place its beauty cannot be believed.

The town recommended itself to him from its quietness and from its beauty.

Between the offences of blasphemy, hypocrisy, and perjury, lies that of apostasy.

Between each plane-tree are planted box-trees.

Conjunctions.

330. Adverbs and Prepositions are often erroneously used for Conjunctions, while Conjunctions are sometimes used for Adverbs or Prepositions.

331. Old writers sometimes use *except* as a Conjunction ; thus :—

I will not let thee go *except* thou bless me.—*Gen.* xxxii., 26 ;

but the word is now unquestionably a Preposition, and should be used only as a Preposition. A sentence like

I cannot go out except I obtain leave

is at variance with present custom.

Unless should be used for *except*, or the Conditional Clause should be changed into

If I do not obtain leave.

332. *Without* is also erroneously used for *unless* or *if* ; as

I shall summon the directors *without* I hear from you.

This is a vulgarism that has not even the excuse of ancient usage.

333. *Like* is often used improperly for *as* ; thus :—

Nobody will miss her *like* I shall.

334. *Rather* should be followed by *than*, not *as*. On the other hand, *prefer* should be followed by *to*, not *than*. The following sentences are both wrong :—

(1) I would rather walk the whole distance alone *as* in his hated company.

(2) He preferred doing nothing *than* run the risk of doing wrong.

335. In comparisons, *as* follows the Positive Degree and *than* the Comparative. This is sometimes forgotten when Positive and Comparative both occur in the same sentence; thus:—

(1) Tom is as young or younger than Jack.
(2) I never heard anyone speak more earnestly nor so eloquently as he.

The first sentence requires *as* after *young*, and the second *than* after *earnestly*, but so placed the words have an undue emphasis thrown on them. Perhaps it would be best to rearrange the sentences; thus:—

(1) Tom is as young as Jack or younger.
(2) I never heard anyone speak more earnestly than he nor so eloquently.

Exercise 123.

Correct the following sentences:—

Be ready to succour such persons who need your help.
They had no sooner risen but they began to work.
Such men that act faithlessly ought to be shunned.
He gained nothing more by his speaking but the praise of eloquence.
To trust in him is no more but to own his power.
Do not trouble to write to me except you are in the humour for it.
My uncle would not admit me without my mother wished it.
I had scarcely addressed him than he knew me.
Scarcely had she gone than she returned again.
I would rather never go in a carriage again as show myself in the park with that frightful thing.
I really believe he would rather sit down with the tinklers by the roadside as spend a day in my company.
They preferred to spend the night there than bivouac close to the enemy's camp.
Some still clung to the prince, preferring proscription and even death itself rather than desert him in his extremity.
The Spaniards, however, preferred to take their chance on the raging element rather than remain in a scene of such brutal abominations.
A wise teacher will often prefer to pass by such mischief than to run the risk . . .
We should not like to guarantee a long run for this piece without mere buffoonery entitles a play to success.
I know many poor scholars and clergymen who cannot attend congress without they receive free hospitality.
Between the production of proof 'sufficient to justify' a sentence, and

the actual execution of a sentence, there is a wide distance in Turkey—especially when the offender has friends at court like Moussa Bey has.
He writes novels like you do.
She couldn't get any stimulants at the union without it was porridge.
Except the system is furnished with gutta-percha nerves and steel sinews it must give in at last.
He must be set down for character-blind like some men are colour-blind.
The shadow will move round part of this circle like the hand of a clock moves round the dial.
He reads his speeches like a curate reads the lessons.

THE SENTENCE.

336. From the investigations of an American writer[1] it appears that the average number of words in a sentence in Chaucer's two prose tales is 40·5; in More's 'History of Richard the Third,' 52·7; in Lyly's 'Euphues,' 52·2; in Ascham's 'Toxophilus,' 42; in Sidney's 'Defence of Poesie,' 50·6; in Hooker's 'Ecclesiastical Polity,' 44; in Bacon's 'Essays,' 28; in Bunyan's 'Pilgrim's Progress,' 37·5; in Milton's prose, 60·8; in Dryden's prose, 45·2; in Sir Thomas Browne, 33·4; in Fuller, 32·8; in Defoe, 68; in Addison, 37·9; in 'The Letters of Junius,' 31·9; in De Quincey, 32·3; in Macaulay, 23·6; in Channing, 25·4; in Emerson, 20·9; in Matthew Arnold, 37; and in J. R. Lowell, 88.

337. It will be seen that, allowing for the nature of the subjects treated and for the idiosyncrasies of the writers, our sentences have been gradually getting shorter. The older writers fashioned their prose after Latin models, and weighted the principal statement with many subordinate clauses and phrases; but after the formation of a distinctly English style complexity gave place to simplicity.

338. Length is almost inconsistent with clearness. In a long sentence the reader is hurried on from phrase to phrase and

[1] L. A. Sherman in Nebraska *University Studies*.

from clause to clause; the attention, instead of being concentrated on the words just being read, is trying to remember and to fit into their proper places the words that are past; and consequently distinct notions of the author's meaning are either not obtained at all, or are obtained only after much effort. A long sentence leaves on the mind such faint and confused impressions as would be got by walking quickly through a picture-gallery; whereas a succession of short sentences leaves such distinct impressions as would be obtained by stopping before each picture.

339. The following sentence from Clarendon's History is unintelligible on a first reading. When divided into shorter sentences it is easier to understand, but it could not be rendered at once clear and smooth without re-casting.

Sentence from Clarendon's History.

And after the king's blessed return to England, he had frequent conferences with many of those who had acted several parts towards the escape; whereof some were of the Chancellor's nearest alliance and others his most intimate friends; towards whom his Majesty always made many gracious expressions of his acknowledgement; so that there is nothing in this short relation, the verity whereof can justly be suspected, though, as is said before, it is great pity that there could be no diary made, indeed no exact account of every hour's adventure from the coming out of Worcester, in that dismal confusion, to the hour of his embarkation at Bright-hemsted, in which there was such a concurrence of good-nature, charity, and generosity in persons of the meanest and lowest extraction and condition, who did not know the value of the precious jewel that was in their custody, yet all knew him to be escaped from such an action as would make the discovery and delivery of him to those who governed over and amongst them of great benefit and present advantage to them, and in those who did know him, of such courage, loyalty, and activity, that all may reasonably look upon the whole as the inspiration and conduct of God Almighty, as a manifestation of His power and glory, and for the conviction of the whole party, which had sinned so grievously; and if it hath not wrought that effect in them, it hath rendered them the more inexcusable.

The same sentence divided.

After the king's blessed return to England he had frequent conferences with many of those who had acted several parts towards the escape, and he always made many gracious expressions of his acknowledgment to them. As some of these persons were of the Chancellor's [that is, the historian's] nearest alliance, and others were his most intimate friends, there is in this short relation nothing whereof the verity can justly be suspected. Still it is a great pity, as has before been said, that there has not been written an exact account of every day's, nay of every hour's adventure from the time of the king's coming out of Worcester, in that dismal confusion, to the time of his embarkation at Bright-hemsted. Such an account would show that his Majesty was treated with good-nature, charity, and generosity by persons of the meanest and lowest extraction and condition. It is true that they did not know the value of the precious jewel that was in their custody, yet they all knew that he had escaped from the action at Worcester and that it would be of great benefit and present advantage to themselves to discover and deliver him to the government. Such a concurrence of good-nature, charity, and generosity from those who did not know the king with courage, loyalty, and activity from those who did know him, may reasonably be looked upon as the inspiration and conduct of God Almighty, and as a manifestation of His power and glory. Such a manifestation ought to have convinced the whole party, which had sinned so grievously; and if it hath not wrought that effect in them it hath rendered them the more inexcusable.

Exercise 124.

Divide each of the following long sentences into shorter ones:—

It was not thought fit to pursue Lambert, who, being known to be a man of courage and conduct, and his troops to be of the best, was suspected by so disorderly a retreat to have only design'd to have drawn the army another way to disorder and disturb their march, which they resolved to continue with the same expedition they had hitherto used, which was incredible, until they should come to such a post as they might securely rest themselves.

The army liked their quarters here so well that neither officer nor soldier was in any degree willing to quit them till they should be thoroughly refreshed, and it could not be deny'd that the fatigue had been even insupportable; never had so many hundred miles been march'd in so few days, and with so little rest; nor did it in truth appear reasonable to any that they should remove from thence; since it was not possible that they should be able to reach London, though it had been better prepared for the king's reception than it appeared to be before Cromwell would be there: who having with great haste continued his march in a direct line was now as near to it as the king's army was, and stood only at a gaze to be informed what his Majesty meant to do.

Worcester was a very good post, seated almost in the middle of the kingdom and in as fruitful a country as any part of it, a good city, serv'd by the noble river of Severn from all the adjacent counties; Wales behind it from whence levies might be made of great numbers of stout men: it was a place where the king's friends might repair, if they had the affections they pretended to have, and it was a place where he might defend himself, if the enemy would attack him, with many advantages and could not be compelled to engage his army in a battle till Cromwell had gotten men enough to encompass him on all sides since the enemy must be on both sides the river and could not come suddenly to relieve each other and the straitening the king to this degree would require much time in which there might be an opportunity of several insurrections in the kingdom if they were to weary of the present tyranny and so solicitous to be restor'd to the king's government as they were conceived to be: for nobody could ever hope for a more secure season to manifest their loyalty than when the king was in the heart of the kingdom with a formed army of about 15,000 men, horse and foot, (for so they might be accounted to be) with which he might relieve those who were in danger to be oppressed by a more powerful party.

In expectation of a good appearance of the people he went to a little market town call'd Wigan in Lancashire where he stayed that night; when in the morning a regiment or two of the militia of the neighbour counties and some other troops of the army commanded by a man of courage whom Cromwell had sent to follow in the track of the king's march to gather up the stragglers and such as were not able to keep pace with the army having received some advertisement that a troop of the king's horse were behind the army in that town fell very early into it before the persons in the town were out of their beds having assurance upon all the enquiry they could make that there was no enemy near them.

But having sat long in the House of Commons and observed the disingenuity of the proceedings there and the gross cheats by which they deceiv'd and cozen'd the people he had contracted so hearty an indignation against them and all who were cozen'd by them and against all who had not his zeal to oppose and destroy them, that he often said things to slow and phlegmatick men which offended them and it may be injured them; which his good nature often oblig'd him to acknowledge and ask pardon of those who would not question him for it.

It was upon the third of September when the king having been upon his horse most part of the night and having taken a full view of the enemy and everybody being upon the post they were appointed and the enemy making such a stand that it was concluded he meant to make no attempt then, and if he should he might be repelled with ease; his Majesty a little before noon retired to his lodging to eat, and refresh himself, where he had not been near an hour, when the alarm came 'that both armies were engaged;' and though his Majesty's own horse was ready at the door and he presently mounted,

before or as soon as he came out of the city he met the whole body of his horse running in so great disorder that he could not stop them, though he used all the means he could, and called to many officers by their names and hardly preserv'd himself by letting them pass by from being overthrown and overrun by them.

The king's army was no sooner defeated at Worcester but the Parliament renew'd their old method of murthering in cold blood, and sent a commission to erect a High Court of Justice to persons of ordinary quality, many not being gentlemen and all notoriously his enemies, to try the Earl of Derby for his treason and rebellion; which they easily found him guilty of; and put him to death in a town of his own, against which he had expressed a severe displeasure for their obstinate rebellion against the king with all the circumstances of rudeness and barbarity they could invent.

As the greatest brunt of the danger was diverted by these poor people, in his night marches on foot, with so much pain and torment, that he often thought that he paid too dear a price for his life, before he fell into the hands of persons of better quality, and places of more conveniency, so he owed very much to the diligence and fidelity of some ecclesiastical persons of the Romish persuasion; especially to those of the Order of St. Bennet; which was the reason that he expressed more favours after his restoration, to that order than to any other, and granted them some extraordinary privileges about the service of the Queen, not concealing the reason why he did so; which ought to have satisfied all men, that his Majesty's indulgence towards all of that profession, by restraining the severity and rigour of the laws which had been formerly made against them, had its rise from a fountain of princely justice and gratitude, and of royal bounty and clemency.

The marquis's orders for drawing the troops together to any rendezvous, were totally neglected and disobeyed; and the commissioner's orders for the collection of money and contribution in such proportions as had been settled and agreed unto, were as much contemn'd: so that such regiments, as with great difficulty were brought together, were as soon dissolved for want of pay, order and accommodation; or else dispersed by the power of the friars; as in the city of Limerick, when the marquis was there and had appointed several companies to be drawn into the market place, to be employed upon a present expedition, an officer of good affection and thought to have much credit with his soldiers, brought with him two hundred very likely soldiers well arm'd and disciplin'd and having receiv'd his orders from the marquis (who was upon the place) began to march; when a Franciscan friar in his habit, and with a crucifix in his hand came to the head of the company and commanded them all 'upon pain of damnation that they should not march' upon which they all threw down their arms and did as the friar directed; who put the whole city into a mutiny insomuch as the Lord Lieutenant was compell'd to go out of it, and not without some difficulty escaped though most of the magistrates of the city did all that was in their power to suppress the

disorder and to reduce the people to obedience; and some of them were kill'd and many wounded in the attempt.

But by the extraordinary importunity of the Marquis of Ormond, with whom he had preserv'd a fast and unshaken friendship, and his pressing him to preserve Ireland to the king without which it would throw itself into the arms of a foreigner; and then the same importunity from all the Irish nobility, bishops, and clergy (after the Lord Lieutenant had informed them of his purpose) that he would preserve his nation which without his acceptance of their protection would infallibly be extirpated, and their joint promise 'that they would absolutely submit to all his commands and hold no assembly, or meeting amongst themselves, without his permission and commission,' together with his unquestionable desire to do any thing how contrary soever to his own inclination and benefit that would be acceptable to the King and might possibly bring some advantage to his Majesty's service he was in the end prevailed upon to receive a commission from the Lord Lieutenant to be Deputy of Ireland and undertook that charge.

No sooner had the late bills in contravention of seditious meetings which menaced the revolution of the country passed through both Houses of Parliament and we began to experience that tranquillity which arises from a full confidence in the wisdom and vigour of the legislature and to anticipate with grateful exultation the splendid period of the king's coronation, a period illustrated by a light reflected from a succession of brilliant victories and from the glorious termination of a war arduous and protracted beyond all former precedent, than the unfortunate arrival of the queen rekindled that insurgent spirit which had nearly subsided and which was made at once the unhappy medium through which every species of blasphemy and sedition had vented their rage against the constituted authorities of the realm.

At the time the history of these ladies commences some young men of high rank in the army as they were passing through Messina on their return from a war that was just ended in which they had been distinguished by their great bravery came to visit Leonato.

Observing in the *Standard* a long account of the divining-rod, in which my name appears as one of the principal actors, at South Kensington, and of which a weekly journal gave a long, garbled and unfair account of what I did there, omitting to state, first, that, previous to my having been told or shown anything whatever about any water pipe, I actually discovered the spring of water and traced its course, quite opposite to the direction of the water pipe named and which was not a running pipe; also, that so strong did the rod work in my hands that I could not hold it; and that, to convince the company that I used no effort whatever, I asked two of the gentlemen present to hold my wrists as tightly as they could.

Do you observe any difference in the conduct of prisoners who are employed and those who have no employment?—Yes, a good deal. I look upon it from what judgment I can form and I have been a long while in it that

to take a prisoner and discipline him according to the rules as the law allows and if he have no work that that man goes through more punishment in one month than the man that is employed and receives a portion of his labour in three months; but still I should like to have employment because a great number of times I took men away who have been in the habit of earning sixpence a week to buy a loaf and put them in solitary confinement and the punishment is a great deal more without work.

340. Contrast with the extract from Clarendon given on page 240 the following extract from Macaulay:—

Nothing in the early existence of Britain indicated the greatness which she was destined to attain. Her inhabitants, when first they became known to the Tyrian mariners, were little superior to the natives of the Sandwich Islands. She was subjugated by the Roman arms; but she received only a faint tincture of Roman arts and letters. Of the western provinces which obeyed the Cæsars she was the last that was conquered, and the first that was flung away. No magnificent remains of Latian porches and aqueducts are to be found in Britain. No writer of British birth is reckoned among the masters of Latian poetry and eloquence. It is not probable that the islanders were at any time generally familiar with the tongue of their Italian rulers. From the Atlantic to the vicinity of the Rhine the Latin has, during many centuries, been predominant. It drove out the Celtic; it was not driven out by the Teutonic; and it is at this day the basis of the French, Spanish, and Portuguese languages. In our island the Latin appears never to have superseded the old Gaelic speech, and could not stand its ground against the German.

341. No rigid rule can be given concerning the length of a sentence any more than concerning the size of a box. The length of a sentence is regulated, like the size of a box, by what has to be put into it. Every sentence should contain a clear, complete thought and no more.

342. The following sentence,[1] instead of having one subject of thought, has several:—

But now we must admit the shortcomings, the fallacies, the defects, as no less essential elements in forming a sound judgment as to whether the seer and artist were so united in him as to justify the claim just put in by himself and afterward maintained by his sect to a place beside the few great poets who exalt men's minds and give a right direction and safe outlet to their passions through the imagination while insensibly helping them toward balance of character and serenity of judgment by stimulating their sense of proportion, form, and the nice adjustment of means to ends.

[1] Quoted by Dr. Hodgson, who says that it is as coherent as a string of sausages.

343. Dr. Blair gives the following rules for preserving the unity of a sentence:—

(1) *The scene should be changed as little as possible.*

We should not be hurried by sudden transitions from person to person, nor from subject to subject. There is commonly, in every sentence, some person or thing which is the governing word. This should be continued so, if possible, from the beginning to the end of it. Should I express myself thus:—

After we came to anchor they put me on shore, where I was welcomed by all my friends, who received me with the greatest kindness?

In this sentence, though the objects contained in it have a sufficient connection with each other, yet, by this manner of representing them by shifting so often both the place and the person, *we*, and *they*, and *I*, and *who*, they appear in such a disunited view, that the sense of connection is almost lost. The sentence is restored to its proper unity, by turning it after the following manner:—

Having come to an anchor, I was put on shore, where I was welcomed by all my friends, and received with the greatest kindness.

(2) Writers who transgress this rule, for the most part transgress at the same time

A second rule: *never to crowd into one sentence things which have so little connection that they could bear to be divided into two or three sentences.*

The violation of this rule never fails to hurt and displease a reader. Its effect, indeed, is so bad, that, of the two, it is the safer extreme, to err rather by too many short sentences, than by one that is overloaded and embarrassed. Examples abound in authors. I shall produce some, to justify what I now say.

Archbishop Tillotson [says an author of the History of England] died in this year. He was exceedingly beloved both by King William and Queen Mary, who nominated Dr. Tennison, Bishop of Lincoln, to succeed him.

Who would expect the latter part of this sentence to follow, in consequence of the former? 'He was exceedingly beloved by both king and queen,' is the proposition of the sentence: we look for some proof of this, or at least something related to it, to follow; when we are on a sudden carried off to a new proposition, 'who nominated Dr. Tennison to succeed him.'

The following sentence, from a translation of Plutarch, is still worse:—

Their march [says the author, speaking of the Greeks under Alexander], their march was through an uncultivated country, whose savage inhabitants fared hardly, having no other riches than a breed of lean sheep, whose flesh was rank and unsavoury, by reason of their continual feeding upon sea-fish.

Here the scene is changed upon us again and again. The march of the Greeks, the description of the inhabitants through whose country they travelled, the account of their sheep, and the cause of their sheep being ill-tasted food, form a jumble of objects, slightly related to each other, which the reader cannot, without much difficulty, comprehend under one view.

These examples have been taken from sentences of no great length, yet overcrowded. Authors who deal in long sentences, are very apt to be faulty in this article. One need only open Lord Clarendon's History to find examples everywhere. The long, involved, and intricate sentences of that author, are the greatest blemish of his composition; though in other respects as a historian, he has considerable merit. In later, and more correct writers than Lord Clarendon, we find a period sometimes running out so far, and comprehending so many particulars, as to be more properly a discourse than a sentence. Take, for an instance, the following from Sir William Temple, in his 'Essay upon Poetry':—

The usual acceptation takes profit and pleasure for two different things; and not only calls the followers or votaries of them by the several names of busy and idle men, but distinguishes the faculties of the mind, that are conversant about them, calling the operations of the first wisdom, and of the other wit; which is a Saxon word used to express what the Spaniards and Italians call *ingenio*, and the French *esprit*, both from the Latin; though I think wit more particularly signifies that of poetry, as may occur in remarks on the Runic language.

When one arrives at the end of such a puzzled sentence, he is surprised to find himself got to so great a distance from the object with which he at first set out.

(3) I proceed to a third rule for preserving the unity of sentences; which is, *to keep clear of all parentheses in the middle of them.*

On some occasions, these may have a spirited appearance; as prompted by a certain vivacity of thought, which can glance happily aside, as it is going along. But, for the most part, their effect is extremely bad: being a sort of wheels within wheels; sentences in the midst of sentences; the perplexed method of disposing of some thought, which a writer wants art to introduce in its proper place. It were

needless to give many instances, as they occur so often among incorrect writers. I shall produce one from Lord Bolingbroke, the rapidity of whose genius and manner of writing, betrays him frequently into inaccuracies of this sort. It is in the introduction to his 'Idea of a Patriot King,' where he writes thus:—

It seems to me that, in order to maintain the system of the world, at a certain point, far below that of ideal perfection (for we are made capable of conceiving what we are incapable of attaining), but, however, sufficient upon the whole, to constitute a state easy and happy, or, at the worst, tolerable; I say, it seems to me that the Author of nature has thought fit to mingle, from time to time, among the societies of men, a few, and but a few, of those on whom he is graciously pleased to bestow a larger portion of the ethereal spirit than is given in the ordinary course of His government to the sons of men.

A very bad sentence this; into which, by the help of a parenthesis, and other interjected circumstances, his lordship had contrived to thrust so many things, that he is forced to begin the construction again with the phrase *I say*, which, whenever it occurs, may be always assumed as a sure mark of a clumsy ill-constructed sentence; excusable in speaking, where the greatest accuracy is not expected, but in polished writing, unpardonable.

(4) I shall add only one rule more for the unity of a sentence, which is, *to bring it always to a full and perfect close.*

Every thing that is one, should have a beginning, a middle, and an end. I need not take notice, that an unfinished sentence is no sentence at all, according to any grammatical rule. But very often we meet with sentences, that are, so to speak, more than finished. When we have arrived at what we expected was to be the conclusion, when we are come to the word on which the mind is naturally led, by what went before, to rest: unexpectedly, some circumstance pops out, which ought to have been omitted, or to have been disposed of elsewhere; but which is left lagging behind, like a tail adjected to the sentence. All these adjections to the proper close, disfigure a sentence extremely. They give it a lame ungraceful air, and, in particular, they break its unity. Dean Swift, for instance, in his 'Letter to a Young Clergyman,' speaking of Cicero's writings, expresses himself thus:—

With these writings young divines are more conversant than with those of Demosthenes, who by many degrees excelled the other; at least as an orator.

Here the natural close of the sentence is at these words, 'excelled the other.' These words conclude the proposition; we look for no more; and the circumstance added, 'at least as an orator,' comes in with a very halting pace. How much more compact would the sentence have been, if turned thus:—

With these writings young divines are more conversant than with those of Demosthenes, who by many degrees, as an orator at least, excelled the other.

In the following sentence from Sir William Temple, the adjection to the sentence is altogether foreign to it. Speaking of Burnet's 'Theory of the Earth,' and Fontenelle's 'Plurality of Worlds,' he says:—

The first could not end his learned treatise without a panegyric of modern learning in comparison of the ancient; and the other falls so grossly into the censure of the old poetry and preference of the new, that I could not read either of these strains without some indignation; which no quality among men is so apt to raise in me as self-sufficiency.

The word 'indignation' concluded the sentence; the last member, which no quality among men is so apt to raise in me as self-sufficiency,' is a proposition altogether new, added after the proper close.

344. Sentences are either **Periodic** or **Loose.**

345. In a **Period** the reader is kept in suspense, a *complete* thought being conveyed only by the *complete* sentence.

346. In a **Loose** sentence *a* complete thought (not of course *the* complete thought that the writer intends to express) is conveyed by less than the complete sentence.

347. The following is an example of a Period:—

If you look about you, and consider the lives of others as well as your own; if you think how few are born with honour, and how many die without name or children; how little beauty we see, and how few friends we hear of; how many diseases, and how much poverty there is in the world; you will fall down upon your knees, and, instead of repining at one affliction, will admire so many blessings which you have received from the hand of God.

This sentence would have been loose if it had begun with 'You will fall down . . . God' and ended with the *if* clauses.

348. The following is an example of a Loose sentence:—

The next day upon the plains Dr. Hinchman, one of the prebends of Salisbury, met the King/the Lord Wilmot and Philips then leaving him/to

go to the sea coast/to find a vessel/the Dr. conducting the king to a place called Heale/three miles from Salisbury/belonging then to Serjeant Hyde/ who was afterwards Chief Justice of the King's Bench/and then in the possession of the widow of his elder brother/a house that stood alone from neighbours/and from any highway/where coming in late in the evening he supped with some gentlemen/who accidentally were in the house/which could not well be avoided.

The sentence might be finished at each of the bars.

349. The Periodic form may be obtained—

(1) By placing Conditional and other Adverbial Clauses first; thus:—

Periodic.	*Loose.*
Though he slay me yet will I trust him.	I will trust him though he slay me.
Except ye repent ye shall all likewise perish.	Ye shall all likewise perish except ye repent.
If you have tears prepare to shed them now.	Prepare to shed tears now if you have them.
Where ignorance is bliss 'tis folly to be wise.	'Tis folly to be wise where ignorance is bliss.
Since my country calls me I obey.	I obey since my country calls me.
When first she gleamed upon my sight She was a phantom of delight.	She was a phantom of delight When first she gleamed upon my sight.

(2) By placing a Participial Phrase before the word it qualifies; as

Periodic.	*Loose.*
Accustomed to obey from his youth, the responsibility of command proved too great for him.	The responsibility of command proved too great for him, as he had been accustomed to obey from his youth.

(3) By using suspensive words, such as *not only . . . but, both . . . and, either . . . or, neither . . . nor, such . . . as, so . . . that, partly . . . partly, more . . . than, rather . . . than*, &c.; as

Periodic.	*Loose.*
The Greek language had obtained such a vogue in Rome that all the great and noble were not only obliged to learn it but were ambitious everywhere to speak it.	The Greek language had obtained a great vogue in Rome, the great and noble being obliged to learn it and ambitious everywhere to speak it.
In estimating the character of the German reformer we must forget the temper neither of the man nor of the age in which he lived.	We must not forget the temper of the German reformer or of the age in which he lived in estimating his character.

350. Periods are the more formal and stately, Loose sentences the more simple and natural. When there is an excess of Periods the style is affected, and it is slipshod when there is an excess of Loose sentences. The most pleasing effect is obtained by a judicious admixture of the two kinds.

Exercise 125.

(a) *Convert the following Loose Sentences into Periods:—*

They trimmed the lamps as the sun went down.

My poor dog Tray was wherever I went.

Freely we serve because we freely love.

Poor Mary is seen in the corn-field before the bright sun rises over the hill.

Life has passed
With me but roughly since I saw thee last.

Daily near my table steal
While I pick my scanty meal.

They, the true-hearted, came not as the conqueror comes.

I found her lying dead next morning as I passed.

The infant thinks it lives in strange times when it begins to walk.

I stood on the bridge at midnight,
As the clocks were striking the hour.

I had lived a blessed time had I but died an hour before this chance.

Thou must have uncommended died hadst thou sprung in deserts where no men abide.

I still doubt your conclusion though granting your premises.

Then ensued a scene of woe the like of which no eye had seen nor heart conceived.

(b) *Construct or select six Periods and six Loose Sentences.*

351. Examples of Faulty Sentences.

(1) The man who deserves to be punished escapes if you do not tell the truth and some one else suffers.

This sentence consists of three parts:—

(*a*) The man who deserves to be punished escapes.
(*b*) If you do not tell the truth.
(*c*) Some one else suffers.

The second is antecedent; the first is consequent: is the third antecedent or consequent?

If antecedent, read:

If you do not tell the truth and some one else suffers, the man who deserves to be punished escapes.

If consequent, read:—

If you do not tell the truth the man who deserves to be punished escapes and some one else suffers.

This example shows that antecedent and consequent clauses should not be mixed.

(2) We give below his opinion of the virtues of our public-school education; now it is only necessary to say that in all essential respects Lord John Russell's biographer has done his work well.

There is no connection whatever between Lord John Russell's opinion of public schools and the merits of his biographer. The two things should not have been put into one sentence.

(3) We find him proceeding by way of Buffalo to the Falls of Niagara, which he reached about the end of April, and remained there for ten days.

The structure of the sentence is changed after the word *April*. Say—

. . . . Niagara, where he arrived about the end of April, and where he remained for ten days.

(4) James Whale, fishing above the lock, caught a very handsome barbel measuring thirty inches in length and fifteen inches round the girth, and weighed twelve pounds.

James Whale is made to weigh twelve pounds and a new construction is introduced in *weighed*. To balance *inches in length* say *inches in girth*, and to balance *measuring* say *weighing*.

(5) The only English prime minister who has been a professed wit, he felt its efficacy as a weapon.

Its is a Neuter Pronoun, but there is no Neuter Noun for which it may stand; *wit* is used as being the name of a person. Instead of 'its efficacy' say 'the efficacy of wit.'

(6) He had never at any time given prisoner the missing plates nor knew the prisoner used the books.

The construction is changed in *knew*. Say *known* to balance *given*; or, if that does not convey the meaning intended, say 'nor did he know.' 'Never at any time' is tautological; omit 'at any time.'

(7) The kind of stories which these wretched women spread about Sir Robert would be incredible if they were not well authenticated.

The writer does not mean that the stories were well authenticated, but only that the spreading of them was.

(8) There are a million Irishmen living in one room.

It must be a large room. The writer meant that the homes of a million Irishmen consist of one room each.

(9) After signing the prison register as Dubosc the governor asked him who he was.

It was not the governor who signed the prison register. Say 'after he had signed.'

(10) At the end of that time the body of the will was finished for Bill was a rapid worker being written in medium-sized letters.

Bill was not a rapid worker because he was 'written in medium-sized letters.' If the will was finished for that reason place the Participial Phrase after *will*. If, as seems probable, the Participial Phrase is only intended to supply an additional detail, say—

At the end of that time the body of the will (which was written in medium-sized letters) was finished, for Bill was a rapid worker.

(11) She is endowed with such sentiments that would become the superior of a convent.

For *that* say *as*.

(12) 'The Light of Asia,' by Sir Edwin Arnold, appears as the new volume of the Lotos Series. It is daintily got up and will greatly assist in popularising a noble poem.

The sentence as it stands is nonsense—'The Light of Asia' will

greatly assist in popularising itself. Say 'the get-up is dainty and will, &c.'

(13) The obstinacy of their battles is wonderful and never end without great effusion of blood.

The grammatical subject of *end* is *obstinacy*. The subject in the author's mind was *battles*. Say—

Their battles are wonderfully obstinate and never end without great effusion of blood.

(14) We get somehow adjusted to the condition in which we grow up and we do not miss the absence of what we have never enjoyed.

Either say *regret* for *miss* or omit 'the absence of.'

(15) 'Amen,' said Yeo, and many an honest voice joined in that honest compact, and kept it too like men.

A voice might join in an 'Amen,' but could not keep a compact. Say—

Many an honest man joined in that honest exclamation, and kept the compact too like a man.

(16) We wrote you on the 24th inst.

There is no need to have a Preposition before the Indirect Object when the Direct Object is given in the same sentence. Thus we can say

The gardener sold me some roses,

but not

The gardener sold me.

Similarly we can say

We wrote you a letter on the 24th inst.,

but not

We wrote you on the 24th inst.

Similarly

We wired you

should (granting the somewhat doubtful word *wired*) be

We wired to you.

(17) Try and come.

This should be 'Try to come.' The absurdity of the *and* is at once seen if we use the Past Tense,—

He tried and came.

Exercise 126.

Amend the following sentences:—

In all my travels I never met but one Scotchman but what was a man of sense; I believe, indeed, everybody of that country that has any leaves it as fast as they can.

The friendless state which he said he was in, and that he wished to die made Rosalind think that he was like herself unfortunate.

He had come to the conclusion that the child had tumbled into the water and was drowned.

I conceive that by scratching it and tearing it the soot gets in and creates the irritability, which disease we know by the name of the chimney-sweeper's cancer, and is always lectured upon separately as a distinct disease.

Now, sir, what with the antagonism of the public, the criticism of the press, and snubbed and punished by our superiors, what else other than the indifference, as your correspondent says, which marks the metropolitan police-constable, can be the result?

Twenty-three years ago I was living in Colmer Street, and whilst partaking of my tea, about six p.m., in the back parlour, or kitchen (as it was both), my front window was forced open and goods to the value of 20*l.* taken. When my wife went into the room and discovered our loss, as well as seeing something go out of the window, but what she could not tell, it being dark at the time, it took me some time to find a police-constable, and I had to go nearly a quarter of a mile to do that.

You are never sober; you are always drunk. Follow my example and continue being so every day in the week for six months or I will discharge you.

If you are subject to colds, by wearing this garment it is a perfect preventitive.

He then joined an expedition into Spain, and by his help placed Pedro of Castile upon the throne, against which the French had helped.

The longer this ale is kept the better it will be, even to a year in bottle, and it will keep sound in any climate.

A very useful and explicit little treatise upon a rule which is often a stumblingblock to young teachers at examinations. Examples of every type are worked out, and numerous exercises, with their answers.

Eggs either poached or fried are a very favourite and eatable accompaniment of either bacon or ham. In my own opinion the former of these two methods is to be preferred in both cases.

A miscellaneous assemblage of persons in evening attire may be compared with a large library of books, of which the volumes are all mixed up irregularly and often missing.

Among the merits of these illustrations we place very high the portraits,

which are numerous and very faithful likenesses in all cases from the best canvases in the historical galleries in England or abroad.

The comparison of a badly fed and sheltered animal, living in squalor and dirt, its movements restrained by a short chain, is hardly a fair comparison with animals in our Zoological Gardens, who, though captive, are well fed and cared for.

Matters are quite as bad or worse at the School Board than at the Metropolitan Board of Works.

Such enthusiasm is unknown in these days wherein . . . himself, as an American writer informs us, is no longer to be endured and will doubtless excite some ridicule; but for my own part I am not one whit ashamed of it.

This and other ways of improving national education, such as payment by results, &c. [the writer did not mean that payment by results was a means of improving education], can only be altered by the action of the Legislature.

Is it true that three publishers defy competition by having each of their subscribers photographed yearly, and present them with twelve copies?

The meeting between their Royal Highnesses was most cordial, the Duke expressing himself pained that certain words which had been spoken had been much exaggerated, and unhesitatingly agreed to proceed at once to meet his nephew and niece.

The reduction in price is simply a Christmas present to our friends, and can be had in bottles only.

Sir,—In accordance with your instructions I have seen Collings and Medburn, and asked them about Hicks's family, who, I am glad to say, are perfectly ready to give every information and help. Hicks fell off the scaffolding at A. Farm buildings on Tuesday week, and, besides breaking his leg above the knee, injured himself internally, and which will keep him laid up for two months at least. The poor wife is respectable, with three daughters, all small things, which keep her at home and give her enough to do. All she has is five shillings a week from Hicks's club, and an infirm mother. Collings and Medburn say that it is a genuine case, and their wives will see to the proper use of any money which you may see good to devote to the family, which you may rely, sir, will not be wasted. They strongly recommend the case. As for the new iron rails for the home fields which were sent from London on Friday, they arrived in due course, and I had them carted from the station without loss of time, and they are now being set up. Hicks is better to-day; out of danger the doctor thinks. He calls every day here on his way back and lets me know. He is an old man, he says, to stand such a lot of knocking about, but he hopes he will now do nicely. Your obedient servant.

I would also mention that I am anxious to encourage any boy or girl who may show special ability in any branch of drawing, but whose means prevent them attending this class, that I will receive them on your letter of recommendation at a nominal fee.

The consumers would save at least thirty per cent. besides being all picked coal.

That, whilst thanking the Lord Mayor-Elect for his patriotic spirit in endeavouring to signalise his mayoralty by trying to raise a fund to assist the volunteers to perfect their equipment, the want of which is very much felt, it is regretted that it is not thought desirable to form a part of the procession on Nov. 9 next for military reasons.

The point against this method is that it is simply a confession of the failure and ignorance of the parent or master to apply proper methods.

It may best be used in class-teaching, each pupil having a copy, and moving up in his class as he excels his fellows in speed and accuracy, going through the process orally afterwards for their benefit.

The blacksmith, who knew the pony, was about to adopt some means of securing and restoring it to its owner, when, to his astonishment, it came directly towards him, and held up one of its hind feet, which the blacksmith examined, and found a stone between the shoe and the hoof, which being removed, the pony walked back to its pasture with seeming delight.

A traveller, calling at a little inn known by the sign of the 'Beehive,' the landlord of which was very tenacious of the character of his own home-brewed ale, after supping the beverage begged to have it warmed.

It is also thought a fitting time to point out the necessity of providing increased accommodation and an improved service of trains, as under existing arrangements it is attended with great personal inconvenience.

He is not so living a force as Pope, far less as Shakespeare.

She is an indifferent actress, as is also Mr. G., who played the lover.

She does not know really which she likes best, London or the country, for mamma is not near her to decide, being engaged listening to Sir Brian, who is laying down the law to her, and smiling, smiling with all her might.

They will be assisted in the management by the same committee that has been connected with the classes for the past six years with the exception of the late . . . whose recent sudden death has deprived the classes of an honorary secretary, whose uniform kindness and active exertions has not only endeared him alike to teachers and students, but who has done much towards rendering those classes the most successful in the South of London.

To this society he seems frequently to have returned, leaving his wife in her retirement at Hare Hatch, and here [not at Hare Hatch, but at Lichfield] he became acquainted with Miss Sneyd and her sister.

In a Board School established about two years ago, when I last saw the admission register it contained 445 names of scholars.

I know a great many people cannot fancy Indian tea, but prefer Chinese. The former is certainly an acquired taste, but once drunk for some time is always preferred to any other tea.

One young officer who was riding a horse of Sir Henry's met with an accident and was obliged to be destroyed.

Among the many curious occupations of the metropolis is that of human hair merchant. Of these there are many.

He was poisoned, languishing in great pain and suffering until the 14th day of August, and then died.

The rain came down and continued during the time the cyclists had their competition, clearing off about half-past twelve, and continuing fine the remainder of the day.

It is known as the King's Room, but beautifully proportioned and wrought in dark ochre.

Prisoner, a bountiful Providence has endowed you with health and strength, instead of which you go about the country stealing hens.

I am married. My husband's name is Charles C. when he is at home.

While passing your house this morning your dog ran out and bit me.

As soon as she was left alone Augusta went back to the cabin, taking Dick with her, and laid herself down in the berth with a feeling of safety and thankfulness to which she had long been a stranger, where very soon she fell sound asleep.

The aunts of the bride made her valuable presents, of which there was a large and costly list.

The officers in their magnificent uniforms threading the mazy dance with the most lovely and beautiful women.

The above company having been formed for the express purpose of doing the washing of private families, and being fitted up with all the latest improvements, including extensive drying grounds, which are, as is well known, indispensable for the satisfactory drying of clothes. [*Re-cast.*]

We may go further and say that if any teacher is anxious to find out a means of dispensing with punishment in his school, a patient and careful study of this book, which is not dull and which is exceedingly well printed, will give him valuable help.

We offer prices as low or lower than any co-operative store.

The family of Glenfern having already said so much for themselves that it seems as if little remained to be told by their biographer.

The colliers likewise, which are very numerous and even assemble in fleets, are ships of great bulk, and if we descend to those used in the American, African, and European trades, and pass through those which visit our own coasts to the small craft that lie between Chatham and the Tower, the whole forms a most pleasing object to the eye as well as highly warming to the heart of an Englishman who has any degree of love for his country or can recognise any effect of the patriot in his constitution.

The prospect here would be more than a recompense for the loss of the Thames itself, even in the most delightful part of Berkshire or Buckinghamshire, though another Denham or another Pope should write in celebrating it.

Tom Durfey, whose name is almost forgot, and many others who are

quite forgotten, flourished most notably in their respective ages, and eat and were read very plentifully by their contemporaries.

This at least is very probable, that some of these gentlemen may contribute a share of their abilities to the carrying on this work; in which, as nothing shall ever appear in it inconsistent with decency or the religion and true civil interest of my country, no person, how great soever, need be ashamed of being imagined to have a part.

His wealth, the influence of his wide possessions, and the sway attendant on the castle towers as they looked over the fertile acres of the rich vale of Berkeley that had maintained them for so many centuries from the Severn to the hills in all their ancient feudalism and the willingness of the Whig Government to barter rank for support in Parliament formed a strong foundation for success.

If I had wings they would grow out of my two shoulders, I suppose, like the angel in the hymn-book.

Yet these are not doomed to the base fate of being trodden into the dust by the hoof of every passing beast, and have their beauty soiled in the mire.

I think it may assist the reader by placing these before him in their chronological order.

After receipt yesterday of a leg of your preserved mutton, I placed it in hot water for fifteen minutes, dried it with a towel, and was immediately undergoing the process of roasting, which lasted fully two hours.

In stooping down to drink, the weight of the cart forced the mare's head first into the water, and before she could be relieved was drowned.

The immediate reason which led Louis XIV. to convoke the Assembly of 1682 was in order to strengthen his hands in the contest he was carrying on with Pope Innocent XI.

I believe that when he died the Cardinal spoke at least fifty languages.

His attention was not, like Arnold's, occupied on a variety of subjects, a circumstance, of course, tending to diminish its intensity on any one.

In cross-examination the complainant said he did not leave his work because the police wanted him.

We have been reading lately many of the French modern poets, and are much pleased with some by St. Beuve.

The guilelessness of his own heart led him to suspect none in others.

That she was a somnambulist I know, as I have seen her under its influence.

Our climate is mild and somewhat moist, and except when covered by snow, always presents a green surface.

The call for the exhilarating beverage becomes fainter as summer wanes, and at the present season of the year, with the wintry wind blowing and the rain falling, could be in no demand at all.

Self-supporting though the German army is, 600,000 men cannot be so

long away from their homes without being a serious inconvenience and loss.

Few amongst those who have been in Paris, as well as many who have not, are, I presume, ignorant of the fact.

He thought the wealth and honours of this world poor compensation for a quiet conscience and a healthy frame.

The two witnesses were hooted by a dense crowd after witnessing Sir Charles's departure from the building. [It was the crowd that had seen Sir Charles leave the building.]

This led to his taking the Grand Theatre, which, after managing a few years, was unfortunately burnt.

The vestry, on the advice of their medical officer of health, desires to call attention . . .

Their respectable appearance constrained some one to act the part of the Good Samaritan and gave them shelter.

The Turks never kill pigeons and hawks, and seem to have a sort of veneration for those birds and for cats, as well as their ancestors.

A great many people during the past year have written me and given me their consent.[1]

NONSENSE.

352. Most of the sentences in the preceding exercise express (though badly) what their authors intended to express; the following sentences (all taken from books or newspapers) express something different from what their authors intended.

(1) Partly alarmed by the threats of the one and partly by the promises of the other he consented.

He could not be 'partly alarmed' by 'the promises of the other.'

(2) Letters and parcels may be sent at a very cheap and speedy rate.

There is no such thing as a 'speedy rate.'

(3) Thirteen persons are known to have perished in this country in Thursday's storm and two so badly that they may die.

Two perished (that is died) so badly that they may die!

(4) The unsatisfactory relations which exist between the Department, e scholars, the students and the candidates must shortly be reduced to me uniform and logical system.

It is hard to see how 'unsatisfactory relations' could be 'reduced

[1] About a dozen of the sentences in this exercise are quoted from Dr. Hodgson.

to some uniform and logical system,' and still harder to see why they should. The writer probably meant that the 'unsatisfactory relations' must give place to 'some uniform and logical system.'

Exercise 127.

Try to make good sense and good English out of the following sentences :—

Towards the close of his life he committed suicide.

Ships and ducks generally live on the water.

At the end of their lives people generally die.

Nothing but soft water is used and with the exception of soap and soda no chemicals whatever.

A genuine patriot must at all times be ready to die for his country even though it should cost him his life.

Covering a head somewhat sandy with beard and moustache of the same colour was a cloth skull cap.

Whether they (the Government) will consider the practicability of introducing into the Bill some provision for alleviating the great hardship now suffered by the family of any clergyman if he dies while occupying his glebe as many clergymen have latterly found themselves reluctantly compelled to do.—*Notice of a question in the House of Lords.*

The threepenny sheet would have been challenged by a penny paper equalling it in every respect and excelling it in others.

A ball was held in the village schoolroom last night. It was of a very fashionable character, and being the first of its kind that's ever been held in this village before was under the distinguished patronage of T. Brown Tomkyns, Esquire (of the Park) and Mrs. Brown Tomkyns, and two of their esteemed lady friends, Miss Angelina Ponsonby and Miss Talbot Smythe, which a few of the officers had the honour of dancing with them in a few sets; and, on leaving, the company paid them the usual compliment, which they returned in a very etiquette manner. There being also present a few of the leading tradesmen and their wives, and many other ladies and gentlemen from all parts. Much credit is due to Mr. Bright for his decorations and his Chinese lanterns, which was rather amusing; and also his orchestra engagement, which gave every satisfaction.

There has just been brought to our office a monster mushroom, the biggest we have ever seen, gathered on Fog Common on Monday last by a boy of this village by the name of John Stubbs of the extraordinary great size of sixteen inches across.

We have just been informed of a bird which built its nest in the back garden of our neighbour, Mr. Stiles, in an old hat belonging to one of his

children left out by some means and forgotten and was found the other day with a nest inside and last time Mrs. Stiles looked there was the owner of the nest setting on its eggs.

Our departed brother succeeded to the business fifty years since on the death of his father, and was greatly esteemed by all that knew him. He used often to talk of the great Battle of Waterloo against Buonaparte, which he remembered very well, his brother having gone for a soldier and been killed in the war at that time; and how he went up to London to see his brother by stage-coach, because there was no railways at that time before he went to the war, but since then he has never been no further than Slowby from his native place.

Born in the year 1796, the deceased had a long and varied experience. Being an agricultural labourer, with an average family, he knew what it was to do battle for a livelihood during that trying period of the Corn Laws, dating from 1815 to 1846, when the common necessaries of life was about denied the masses of his standard.

Mr. Barkis was the oldest carrier travelling to Slowby market, he having plied between this village and Slowby for sixty-five years, and being a man who enjoyed good health has, without intermission, travelled this journey twice a week, which brings us to the fact that he had accomplished it no less than 6,760 times, and although exposed to all kinds of weather, the deceased continued his journeys until about four weeks since, when he was struck down with a paralytic stroke, to which he succumbed on Monday, the 16th of March instant. Very few are permitted to enjoy so long and varied changes in this life as the one whose death we record above.

Its fringe of seafaring population which clusters in fishing villages and havens and expands at intervals into the statelier proportions of the seaport or naval station . . .

On Tuesday last an accident happened to a man by the name of Smith, working for Mr. Sugar, grocer and baker, of this village, who was out with bread, and opposite the lane near the high road the animal took fright at a heap of stones and bolted, and he couldn't stop him, and he ran down along as far as the Red Lion as fast as he could go, and went smash into a waggon that was standing there driven by a man by the name of Hodge, in the employ of Mr. Bull, farmer, who was in the house getting a glass of beer, and was thrown out, and the back part of it was smashed to atoms. The animal was a good deal damaged, but not very much, and the poor fellow was taken into the Red Lion; and Dr. Sawbones of this village sent for and afterwards removed to his house. We understand he is progressing favourably to recovery, but has sustained a sprained ankle under the care of Dr. Sawbones.

The list of candidates for the office of City Marshal to be appointed this afternoon has been considerably enlarged.

Too many innovations should not be attempted at once, unless where there happens to be, as in chemistry, a predisposition to admit them.

Hume comprehended as much of Shakespeare as an apothecary's phial would, placed under the Falls of Niagara.

We hold that he is, in all probability, directly sowing for himself, as the French sowed at Jena, the seeds of future calamities to Germany.

The name of John Flaxman is among the most distinguished of British sculptors.

Many scenes or incidents which are graphically narrated are told as well or better by other travellers.

Bacon was the great father and inventor of common sense, as the goddess Ceres was of the plough and Bacchus of intoxication.

We are all Englishmen, and men of Devon, as you [Lucy Passmore] seem to be by your speech.

The huzzas of an enthusiastic multitude have effectually drowned the echo of the innumerable groans of slaughtered foreigners.

A melancholy monkey was performing tricks in a dingy red jacket, without any audience excepting the little child.

There's not a man, woman, or child in this hall who has arrived at the age of fifty years but has felt this truth thundering through their minds for centuries.

This is the most wonderful preparation of modern times for the entire restoration of dimness or partial loss of sight.

Obscurity caused by Words 'Understood.'

353. The Verb in the second member of a compound sentence may generally be omitted when it is the same as the Verb expressed in the first member; as

Jack is an industrious boy and his sister [is] an amiable girl.

354. When the Verbs are different they should be expressed in each member; as

Jack is an industrious boy and his sisters are amiable girls.

355. Obscurity often arises from the omission of words.

356. The omission of the Subject in the second member of a compound sentence may cause obscurity; thus:—

He is greatly attached to a Russian who does not meddle in politics and has three children.

Who has three children—he or the Russian? If the former, insert *he* before *has*; if the Russian, insert *who*.

357. The omission of a Preposition may cause obscurity; thus:—

We hear that a testimonial is to be given to all who aided the strikers especially Mr. Burns.

The writer meant 'especially to Mr. Burns.' The last phrase as it stands may be taken to mean 'especially to those who aided Mr. Burns.'

358. An Ellipsis which may be understood in more than one way should not be employed.

I love him better than you

may mean

I love him better than you love him,

or

I love him better than I love you.

359. The omission of the Conjunction *that* may cause obscurity; thus:—

My father has just heard that Fred is coming to town next week and hopes that he may stay a few days with us.

Who hopes? my father or Fred? If Fred, say—

My father has just heard that Fred is coming to town next week and that he hopes he may stay a few days with us.

If my father, repeat the principal Subject before *hopes*.

360. It is generally well to repeat the Relative Pronoun when it is the Subject to several Verbs. The following is obscure:—

My hat which I had fastened with string to my head while I was rowing and had stuck on all the time I was swimming, fell off after I reached land.

Repeat *which* before *had stuck*.

Exercise 128.

Amend the following sentences:—

The associate having called on the case and the jury having been sworn, said 'Does anyone appear for the plaintiff?'

Mr. J. H. then took the pistol from C. who struggled violently for the possession of it and handed it to Mr. W.

Was it possible you could be the author of that most inhuman letter to the Duke of Bedford I have read with astonishment and horror?

Let nothing induce you to live in a house that never gets sunshine or a family that never worship.

Ely is not much better though it has the advantage of the magnificent cathedral within view just beyond the gardens where the plum-trees are now blossoming and the sluggish river Ouse which bounds them and keeps them in sustenance.

In February he left her telling her he had to fulfil an engagement and had never since returned.

The clergyman thought that the teacher showed some sympathy with the farmer and was at once dismissed.

She was told that her carriage had been sent away again and was pushed back again to make way for others.

A young lady of exquisite beauty had tried for months to shake off an importunate lover, who refused to go, though she had told him repeatedly that she would not have him at any price, but persisted in dogging her footsteps wherever she went.

Their aim will be to sell everything cheap and hope to receive a share of your support.

The building is made almost entirely of glass and iron girders.

There they found themselves in the same distress for want of food that Ganymede and Aliena had been.

I married the girl I loved, a respectable housemaid, and the daughter of a labourer.

There are three crops, one in April, May, August.

J. D. and J. T. were charged with stealing a watch from the person of J. R. whilst asleep on the highway near Llanelly.

He has never and cannot deny the allegations.

The geographical readers are as a rule good, but if drawn up more on the lines of . . . 's Geography of the British Isles this important subject would be better handled than is now the case.

Antony was not less desirous of destroying the conspirators than his officers, but he could not brook that it should be owing to Cæsar.

Lord Kildare boldly repaired to the king, was so favourably heard that he received a pardon and the same obsequious parliament reversing his attainder was appointed to supersede Tiptoft.

We sell bicycles and tricycles fitted with the most modern improvements and well-known manufacture.

We have frequently had occasion to notice his vocal performances and congratulate him upon his appointment.

He stepped to the stone basin in which the waters of the fountain as they fell formed bubbles which danced in the white moonlight and took so long a draught as if he meant to exhaust the spring.

One victory by land or sea turns the scale, and the northern Powers who have more reason to hate France than England will join us.

A Greek was not more unlike a Frenchman than the theatres of the two nations.

The lecture is an able summary of the history of this remarkable man who has attained the first place for the present in English politics, and deserves to be widely distributed.

The British people had prospered in peace, and they detested war as cordially as the Peace Society.

SIMILE AND METAPHOR.

361. A Simile is a comparison explicitly stated; as:

Now does he feel his title
Hang loose upon him like a giant's robe
Upon a dwarfish thief.

How far that little candle throws his beams!
So shines a good deed in a naughty world.

An evil soul producing holy witness
Is like . . .
A goodly apple rotten at the heart.

The imputation of inconsistency is one to which every sound politician and every honest thinker must sooner or later subject himself. The foolish and the dead alone never change their opinion. The course of a great statesman resembles that of navigable rivers, avoiding immovable obstacles with noble bends of concession, seeking the broad levels of opinion on which men soonest settle and longest dwell, following and marking the most imperceptible slopes of national tendency, yet always aiming at direct advances, always recruited from sources nearer heaven, and sometimes bursting open paths of progress and fruitful human commerce through what seem the eternal barriers of both.

362. A Metaphor is a condensed Simile. The comparison is implied but not expressed at length; thus:—

But look, the morn in russet mantle clad
Walks o'er the dew of yon high eastern hill.

The simile implied here is, 'The morning like to a person clad in russet mantle walks,' &c.

Stand therefore having your loins girt about with truth and having on the breastplate of righteousness . . . above all taking the shield of faith wherewith ye may be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked.

363. Similes and Metaphors are employed

(1) To aid the understanding.

We comprehend the unknown best by comparison with the known.

(2) To intensify the feelings; as

Offence's gilded hand may shove by justice.

What a piece of work is man; how noble in reason! how infinite in faculty! in form and moving how express and admirable! in action how like an angel! in apprehension how like a god! the beauty of the world! the paragon of animals!

(3) To give an agreeable surprise.

Facts or arguments which would otherwise have taken no definite form in the mind may be crystallised into a simile or metaphor, as in the following examples:—

Last war the winds, those ancient and unsubsidised allies of England, the winds upon which English ministers depend as much for saving kingdoms as washerwomen do for drying clothes,—the winds stood your friends.

Our conduct to Ireland during the whole of this war has been that of a man who subscribes to hospitals, weeps at charity sermons, carries out broth and blankets to beggars, and then comes home and beats his wife and children.

We had compassion for the victims of all other [*other* is superfluous] injustice and oppression except our own.

364. The following rules should be observed in the conduct of Metaphors:—

(1) Do not use metaphors, except when needed to make a sentence clearer or stronger. Needless metaphors are a blemish instead of an ornament.

(2) Do not pursue a simile or metaphor too far. The further it is pursued the less likely is the comparison to hold.

(3) Metaphors should avoid mean or disagreeable details.

(4) Metaphors should not be forced. Some metaphors are so far-fetched that (as Mr. Lowell says) one could wish their authors no worse fate than to be obliged to carry them back whence they came.

(5) Do not mix literal and metaphorical language. In the sentence

I was walking on the barren hills of sin and sorrow near Welshpool,

'the barren hills of sin and sorrow' is metaphorical, and 'near Welshpool' is literal.

(6) Do not mix metaphors. The following extract sins against this rule :—

I find nothing in the 'Improvements [in education]' which produces a new wish in my mind as to my 'Essay.' It must rest on its own basis. I have cast my gauntlet, let them wield it who may. I know no one more equal to the task or better disposed to apply it to the useful and pious purposes to which it is fitted than yourself. If founded, as I believe, on truth it will last for ever.

The 'Essay' is first a solid body resting on its own basis. Then it is a gauntlet thrown down as a gage of battle. A gauntlet when thrown down was taken up by him who accepted the challenge, but the author quoted makes it to be wielded, afterwards to be applied to useful and pious purposes, and finally to be founded on truth.

365. Perhaps the best way of dealing with such confusion is to make all the statements literal; thus :—

I find nothing . . . 'Essay.' I have said all that I had to say; I have described my plan and shall leave others to put it into practice. I do not know anyone better fitted than you to apply my principles usefully and piously. If they are, as I believe, true they will last for ever.

366. Instead of employing literal language in the place of a mixture of metaphors we may sometimes apply one metaphor consistently. Thus the sentence

Walk up and down this little place till wicked men and dying women lost in the desert get saved from shipwreck and sail safe in the vineyard for evermore

may be changed into—

Walk up and down this little place till men and women lost in the desert get safely carried to a land of plenty.

367. Sometimes also we may retain one metaphor and employ literal language for the other. In the sentence

They admire the profundity of what is mystical and obscure, mistaking the muddiness of the water for depth and magnifying in their imaginations what is viewed through a fog,

there are two good metaphors but they are inconsistent. For the second we can substitute the literal—

and liking most what they least understand.

Exercise 129.

Amend the following sentences in one of the ways just described :—

In the corrupted currents of this world
Offence's gilded hand may shove by justice.

. . . Bristol Castle which they say is held
By Bushy, Bagot and their complices,
The caterpillars of the commonwealth,
Which I have sworn to weed and pluck away.

Was the hope drunk
Wherein you dressed yourself? Hath it slept since?

I bridle-in my struggling muse with pain,
That longs to launch into a bolder strain.

This is a mortal wound to the very keystone upon which the whole vast arch of morality reposes.

Straight the fierce storm involves his mind anew,
Flames through the nerves and boils along the veins.

The earlier thunders of the *Edinburgh Review* have lost their terrors because they are in fact mere echoes of commonplace opinion. They are often clumsy enough and have all the air of judicial authority, but we feel that they are empty shams concealing no solid corps of strong personal feeling, even of the perverse variety.

If he imagines that he will dissuade us from stamping things at the workhouse with their proper label he is very much wide of the mark.

We will burn all our ships and with every sail unfurled steer boldly out into the ocean of freedom.

The chariot of the revolution is rolling along and gnashing its teeth as it rolls.

He is like a drowning man clutching at a straw and trying to kill two birds with one stone.

There was a famous house on Richmond Green which had raised its tall head and attempted to found a camp within their walls, but which was nothing more than evanescent efforts of a few individuals to oppose the best interests of their country and the welfare and happiness of this particular locality.

My slenderer and younger taper imbibed its borrowed light from the more matured and redundant fountain of yours.

The plan of education prescribed by it is the plan of the British and Foreign School Society which is the basis of it and of which it is a perfect reflection.

How can we contemplate without apprehension those naked schemes of education which offer no effectual barrier against the infidelity and demoralising doctrines of the times?

Messrs. O'B. and H. determined to strike a blow for liberty in large type.

Mr. Speaker,—I arise to place in nomination a man, sir, whom we all know, sir, to be a man who has got no peer. We all know, sir, that he is more than qualified, sir, for the position, for I served with him during the war, sir.

During the dark and bloody days when the pale face of hunger put his bloody hand on the heart of the nation, he was found to be as true as steel and grabbed the gory wolf by the lappels of his shirt and shook him until he loudly begged for mercy.

Peace has poured oil on the troubled waters, and they blossom like the rose. She has come down among us in her floating robes, bearing the olive-branch in her beak. In one hand she holds the scales of justice, and with the other folds her wings. The American eagle broods over his nest in the rocky fastnesses, and his young shall lie down with the lamb. We have gone through the floods, and have turned their hot ploughshares into pruning-hooks. May we be as lucky in the future, preserving forever our Goddess of Liberty one and inseparable.

This would lead us too deep into the dry and troubled waters of moral philosophy.

Her name has long passed away and her glory eclipsed by many a wave of modern fashion in verses.

The government never becomes a crystallised bureaucracy running in a groove and deaf to reform.

The competition of the government railways is cutting the ground from under the steamers' feet.

As glorious
As is a winged messenger from heaven,
Unto the white upturned wondering eyes
Of mortals, that fall back to gaze on him,
When he bestrides the lazy pacing clouds,
And sails upon the bosom of the air.

The charm dissolves apace,
And as the morning steals upon the night,
Melting the darkness, so their rising senses
Begin to chase the ignorant fumes that mantle
Their clearer reason.

At anchor laid, remote from home,
Toiling I cry, 'Sweet spirit come!
Celestial breeze no longer stay
But swell my sails and speed my way;
Fain would I mount, fain would I glow,
And loose my cable from below;
But I can only spread my sail,
Thou, thou must breathe th' auspicious gale.'

This world with all its trials is the furnace through which the soul must pass and be developed before it is ripe for the next world.

To overbear such men is the very highway to put an extinguisher on the Christianity of our land.

The germ, the dawn of a new vein in literature lies there.

BREVITY.

368. It has already been shown (Par. 224) that good writers do not fear repetition. There will be no difficulty in showing further that good writers deliberately employ repetition, knowing that, skilfully managed, it adds to the force and clearness of their style.

369. In the first pages of Macaulay's History we find the following instances of repetition:—

She was subjugated by the Roman arms, but she received only a faint tincture of Roman arts and letters.

In the continental kingdoms into which the Roman empire was then dissolved the conquerors learned much from the conquered race. In Britain the conquered race became as barbarous as the conquerors.

Such were the marvels which an able historian . . . gravely related in rich and polite Constantinople touching the country in which the founder of Constantinople had assumed the imperial purple.

She had given a too easy admission to doctrines borrowed from the ancient schools and to rites borrowed from the ancient temples.

Such a class will doubtless abuse its power, but mental power even when abused is still a nobler and better power than that which consists merely in corporeal strength.

The Court of Rouen seems to have been to the Court of Edward the

Confessor what the Court of Versailles long afterwards was to the Court of Charles II.

It was at length thought necessary to lay a heavy fine on every Hundred in which a person of French extraction should be found slain, and this regulation was followed up by another regulation providing that every person who was found slain should be supposed to be a Frenchman unless he were proved to be a Saxon.

370. While repetition, skilfully managed, is a beauty, such repetition as the following extracts contain is a great blemish :—

The Subject-Matter provides for the most modern requirements. The Grammatical Treatment in the Exercises on the Text and the Poetry provide for the most modern requirements in Literature. The number of Lessons exactly suit the most modern requirements. The Graduation of each Standard has been based on what experience has shown to be the most modern requirements.

Dr. Collier is, without doubt, the finest physician in our city. He is a perfect gentlemen, and is one of the best surgeons in our city, if not the best. His charges are reasonable for a man who never loses a case, and we are glad to know that he has refused a lucrative practice in another town in order to come to our city, where he will soon be so highly esteemed for his skill and gentlemanly qualities. He is not an old man, but he is thoroughly experienced, and never loses a case. We congratulate the people of our enterprising and beautiful city that he will remain in our city.

371. Verbosity of the kind exemplified in the last paragraph is disagreeable to everybody except the verbose, and even to them such verbosity in other people is disagreeable.

372. Brevity, on the other hand, is generally pleasing. Herodotus tells the following story which illustrates the Spartan love of it :—

The Samians who were expelled by Polycrates immediately on their arrival at Sparta obtained an audience of the magistrates and spoke a great while in the language of suppliants. The answer which they first received informed them that the commencement of their discourse was not remembered and the conclusion not understood. At the second interview they simply produced a leathern bag and complained that it contained no bread. Even to this the Lacedæmonians replied that their observation was unnecessary.—BELOE'S *Translation*, Book III., c. xlvi.

373. The despatch said to have been sent by Julius Cæsar after the battle of Zela (*'Veni, Vidi, Vici'*) is a famous example of

brevity, though an acute critic points out that the first two words are implied in the third, for Cæsar could not have conquered without coming and seeing.

374. EXAMPLES OF SUPERFLUOUS WORDS.

(1) My banks they are furnished with bees.

Where a king governs there is no need of a viceroy; so where a Noun governs there is no need of a Pronoun. Omit *they*.

(2) I do not like the house in which I live in.

Omit the first or the second *in*.

(3) Which rule if it had been observed a neighbouring prince would have wanted a great deal of the incense which has been offered up to him.

For 'which rule if it' say 'if this rule.'

4) The king behaved to his enemies with great magnanimity of mind.

Magnanimity (from the Latin *magnus*, great, and *animus*, mind) means greatness of mind. 'Of mind' should therefore be omitted.

(5) These pills are a panacea for all the ills that flesh is heir to.

Panacea is from the Greek *πανάκεια*, all healing, and the sentence therefore means

These pills are a heal-all for all the ills that flesh is heir to.

For *panacea* say *remedy* or omit 'all.'

(6) Her burden was almost intolerable to be borne.

Intolerable means cannot be borne. 'To be borne' should therefore be omitted.

(7) He that curseth his father or mother let him die.

He or *him* is superfluous; say either

Let him that curseth his father or mother die;

or

He that curseth his father or mother must die.

(8) What went ye out for to see?

When the Authorised Version of the Bible appeared, *for* was permissible in the Infinitive of Purpose, but it is no longer allowed.

(9) I do not doubt of it.
Omit *of.*

(10) I do not doubt but that it is true.
Omit *but.*

(11) Go quickly from hence.
Omit *from.*

(12) You are to be taken back to the place from whence you came.
Omit *from.*

(13) But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil thou shalt not eat of it
Omit *of it.*

(14) I have got a book.
Omit *got.*

(15) In the Attic commonwealth it was the privilege and birthright of every citizen and poet to rail aloud and in public.

Birthright includes *privilege*, *citizen* includes *poet*, and *in public* includes *aloud.* The sentence, therefore, can be shortened to

In the Attic commonwealth it was the birthright of every citizen to rail in public.

Exercise 130.

Re-write the following sentences, omitting all superfluous words :—

The king he is just.
The men they were there.
Many words they darken speech.
Who, instead of going about doing good, they are perpetually intent upon doing mischief.
Disappointments and afflictions, however disagreeable, they often improve us.
Simple and innocent pleasures, they alone are durable.
Man, though he has great variety of thoughts, from which others as well as himself might receive profit and delight, yet they are all within his own breast.

The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hooks of steel.

One bullet entered his neck and killed him dead.
He fell into the river and his body was not recovered for twenty-eight hours. When found he was quite dead.
When are you going to begin to start ?
Bring me a jug of boiling hot water.
He is a man of colour, looks a man of intelligence, and has a smart appearance.
The resolution was carried unanimously by everyone present.
He has a voice quite vociferous.
These words were audibly heard by all present.
Allow me to express our gratitude for the universal marks of sympathy shown to the memory of my late husband by all who knew him.
Prisoner was a powerfully built man.
Our whole discourse is all of her.
He stooped down to pick up a stone.
Corns radically eradicated by a new and novel remedy.
We sell pure unadulterated wines.
The name of the town was called Weymouth.
He is a double-faced hypocrite.
The town has a population of only forty thousand inhabitants.
They lived near a damp marsh.
He married a woman.
We live in the county of Pembrokeshire.
At last he returned back to his brother.
You ill-treated this poor weak feeble old man.
He comes to see me every afternoon at three p.m.
This new innovation proved more than abundantly sufficient to disturb his equanimity.
They were followed by the landlady in a state of great agitation crying and wringing her hands.
We have fifteen little ducklings.
We went alone to the foot of the mountain, from whence we were conducted by a bald-headed guide.
We should wash ourselves three times every day of our lives.
The transparency of the president's move is clear to everyone.
Carefully read your composition over when finished, put in the words left out and correct all mistakes.
Government will no doubt soon be in a position to see its way to entertain a proposal for taking steps to consider the advisability of discussing the expediency of seriously facing the question of giving its attention to the subject of the possibility of deliberating upon the desirability or otherwise of instituting a commission of inquiry to inquire into the matter.
At midnight he heard a cry of 'murder' from a dark court in which there was no light.

All London was agitated from one end to the other.
The emperor's days were prematurely shortened.
It becomes ideally long and narrow and fulfils the ideal of the unspeakable Turk.
It is characteristic of the character of the union.
He spoke of the provision providing for the continuance of plant life.
I happened to see him accidentally.
The prisoner could not escape from thence.
There is an interesting volume about to see the light in a short time.
The skipper he stood beside the helm.
Lars Porsena of Clusium by the Nine Gods he swore.
The woman whom thou gavest to be with me she gave me of the tree.
The Red Cross it conquered, the Crescent it fell.
I will venture, with your kind indulgence, to occupy some of your time this afternoon; premising only that, as there is a great deal to get through at these annual meetings, that the remarks shall be as brief as possible.
They pay from five shillings per head and upwards.
This book is essentially a school grammar suited to the requirements of class-teaching, yet sufficiently wide in its range as to embrace the needs of pupil-teachers.
The cause of the Great Plague of London was through want of cleanliness.
The action of the vicar caused considerable ill-feeling, especially as both Mr. A. and Mr. B. are both devoted members of the Church.
These they brought home and began to twist them into baskets.
By the help of soap we wash dirt off of our clothes.
John P.
Robinson he
Says they didn't know everything down in Judee.
He that withholdeth corn the people shall curse him.
He is an old veteran.
To it alone I shall confine myself.
He saw that the reason why witchcraft was ridiculed was because it was use of the miraculous.
The reason why Socrates was condemned to death was on account of his singularity.
Her position was by no means of an enviable character.
Rise, laud, and bless His Name.
It was an original invention of his own.
Charles V. and Francis I. mutually encouraged each other.

The preparations for the grand expedition to South America which had been so long in preparation went on without intermission.[1]
The concourse of strangers attracted by its celebrity, its monuments, its galleries, its theatres, and its other attractions was immense.
Twelve persons were seized in the cathedral under the most suspicious circumstances, but five only were concealing a conspiracy which was only punishable with imprisonment.
In many of his works we see a complete acquaintance with the secret springs of evil which are ever springing up in the breast.
Such was the pitiable state of weakness to which the British naval force had been reduced by the ceaseless reductions of previous years.
The constituents of the boroughs were persons renting tenements rented at from 10*l.* to 20*l.*
The contraction of the currency and consequent fall of the prices of agricultural produce 50 per cent. fell with crushing effect upon the country.
So general was the feeling on this subject that it was made the subject of a distinct pledge to the electors.
This proposal was no great violation of the liberties of the subject, for it only proposed to subject military persons to the trial of their military superiors.

375. Sentences containing too many words are said to exhibit **Pleonasm** (otherwise **Redundancy**) or **Tautology.** Both must be carefully avoided, though the distinction between the two is of no practical importance.

376. When there is pleonasm or tautology, a sentence must be too long. When there is neither, it may sometimes be shortened by the employment of various devices, such as

(1) By the use of one word for several; as

My burden is *more than I can bear.* | My burden is *intolerable.*

(2) By inserting only once the common Subject of several Verbs.

(3) By using words in Apposition instead of an explanatory sentence; as

His father *was named* Charles Goldsmith. *He* studied in the reign of Queen Anne at the diocesan school of Elphin. *He* became attached to the daughter of the schoolmaster, *he* married her, *he* took orders and *he* settled at a place called Pallas in the county of Longford.

His father, Charles Goldsmith, studied in the reign of Queen Anne at the diocesan school of Elphin, became attached to the daughter of the schoolmaster, married her, took orders, and settled at a place called Pallas in the county of Longford.

[1] This and the remaining sentences of this Exercise are quoted in Breen's *Modern English Literature.*

In their primitive state of simplicity the Germans were surveyed by the discerning eye of Tacitus. *They were also* delineated by *his* masterly pencil. He was the first of historians who, &c.	In their primitive state of simplicity the Germans were surveyed by the discerning eye and delineated by the masterly pencil of Tacitus, the first of historians who applied the science of philosophy to the study of facts.

(4) By inserting only once the common Complement of several Verbs; as

Oliver early became a passionate admirer of Irish music and through life continued to be *one* [or such].	Oliver early became and through life continued to be a passionate admirer of Irish music.

(5) By inserting only once an Adjunct common to several words; as

Goldsmith, while he suffered all the humiliations of his situation, threw away all *its* advantages.	Goldsmith, while he suffered all the humiliations, threw away all the advantages of his situation.

(6) By inserting only once the common Object of several words; as

They were as little disposed to endure an injury as to offer *one*.	They were as little disposed to endure as to offer an injury.

(7) By inserting only once the Verb common to several Subjects; as

His style was always pure and easy, and on proper occasions *it was* pointed and energetic. His narratives were always amusing, his descriptions *were* always picturesque, his humour *was* rich and joyous, yet it *was* not without an occasional tinge of amiable sadness.	His style was always pure and easy, and on proper occasions pointed and energetic. His narratives were always amusing, his descriptions always picturesque, his humour rich and joyous, yet not without an occasional tinge of amiable sadness.

(8) By using a Participial Phrase for a Clause or Sentence; as

As he was inclined to peace by his temper and situation, &c.	Inclined to peace by his temper and situation, it was easy for him to discover . . .

377. It must not be supposed that, because rules have been given for securing brevity, brevity is always worth securing. We have already seen (Pars. 353–360) that it may be inconsistent with clearness. It may also be inconsistent with simplicity and naturalness. Thus the sentence

I have read about, passed through and lived near New York

is shorter, but much less agreeable than

I have read about New York, lived near it and passed through it.

Exercise 131.

Shorten the following sentences:—

He spells words as they are pronounced.

He denies the existence of a God.

He has joined the majority.

These structures are very minute, but it is quite possible to see them and they can be easily felt.

The dish is very agreeable to the taste.

This word is accented on the last syllable but one.

Italy is almost surrounded by the sea.

The Rev. John Smith is thoroughly imbued with the spirit of the priestly class.

He became the common butt of boys and masters, he was pointed at as a fright in the playground and he was flogged as a dunce in the schoolroom.

After a war of about forty years, which was undertaken by the most stupid of all the emperors, which was maintained by the most dissolute of them, and which was terminated by the most timid of them, the far greater part of the island submitted to the common yoke.

As they were engaged in the pursuit of pleasure or as they were engaged in the exercise of tyranny, the first Cæsars seldom showed themselves to the armies or to the provinces.

As the feeble assembly was deserted by the people and was threatened by a military force it was compelled to ratify the choice of the Prætorians.

They did not attempt to preserve conquests which were separated from the provinces of the empire by a large tract of intermediate desert.

The feeble sovereigns of Osrhoene were placed on the dangerous verge of two contending empires; they were attached from inclination to the Parthian cause, but the superior power of Rome exacted from them a reluctant homage.

The various modes of worship which prevailed in the Roman world were all considered by the people as equally true; they were all considered by the philosopher as equally false; and they were all considered by the magistrate as equally useful.

They knew and they valued the advantages of religion.

The masters of the Roman world surrounded their throne with darkness they concealed their irresistible strength and they humbly professed themselves the accountable ministers of the senate whose decrees they dictated, and they obeyed.

STRENGTH.

378. The strength of a sentence cannot be to any large extent a matter of rules. When there is inherent weakness in the thought, no skill in the choice or the arrangement of the words can make the expression of it strong; though, on the other hand, lack of skill in the choice or the arrangement of the words may weaken the expression of a thought inherently strong.

379. It follows that the first points to be attended to are the choice and arrangement of words. As these subjects have already been discussed at great length, little need be said about them now. A few hints may, however, be given.

(1) Words of English origin are more forcible than words of foreign origin.

He is an adept in the art of natation

is weak (as well as vulgar) compared with

He swims well.

(2) Particular terms are more forcible than general. For instance :—

There was a great storm, but it did no damage to the house, for it had a firm foundation,

is much less forcible than

The rain descended and the floods came and the winds blew and beat upon that house, and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

(3) Metaphor may be stronger than literal statement; thus :—

Unfaltering on its dreadful brink
To his red grave he went

is stronger than

He showed no signs of fear as he was led to execution.

(4) A Simile is often worth a score of Superlatives. The sentence 'Life is tedious' would not, if half the Adverbs in the dictionary were placed before the Adjective, be so strong as

Life is as tedious as a twice-told tale
Vexing the dull ear of a drowsy man.

(5) When a sentence consists of several parts they should be arranged in the order of their strength, the weakest first; thus :—

This decency, this grace, this propriety of manners to character, is so essential to princes in particular, that, whenever it is neglected, their virtues lose a great degree of lustre, and their defects acquire much aggravation. Nay, more; by neglecting this decency and this grace, and for want of a sufficient regard to appearances, even their virtues may betray them into failings, their failings into vices, and their vices into habits unworthy of princes, and unworthy of men.

380. Such an arrangement is called a **Climax.**

The word *Climax* is often used as if it meant the highest point ['Things have now reached a climax']. *Climax*, however, is the Greek word (κλῖμαξ) for a ladder, and as a term in rhetoric means an ascent.

381. The opposite to **Climax** is **Anti-Climax** or **Bathos.** This is exemplified when an ascent is followed by a descent; thus :—

For forty centuries the thunders of Sinai have echoed through the world 'Thou shalt not steal.' This is also a principle of the common law and a rule of equity.

Prisoner, not only have you committed murder, but you have run a bayonet through the breeches of one of her Majesty's uniforms.

MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES TO BE AMENDED.

It seems but the other day that we were attending the consecration service in Westminster Abbey, and listened to the eloquent address.

Then having got up to move another amendment requesting the Government to appoint an inquiry committee, the chairman stopped him.

According to the best information I can obtain, the prospect of prolonged peace has never for fifteen years been so tangible.

My lords, I regret to have to inform your lordships that H.M.S. ——.

while leaving the harbour, came into collision with another vessel, and her bowsprit has been carried away.[1]

Many fresh and unhackneyed pieces are interspersed with other indispensable favourites.

Mr. S. M. writes to state that he was not the solicitor for the prosecution in the case of the man who was sentenced—unjustly it is held—to three months' hard labour for an alleged assault on a blackleg by Mr. Saunders at Worship Street.

The young ladies of a place which shall be nameless, as a protest against chattering women, recently organised a 'Thought Club,' which has proved so successful that at the very first meeting they talked for five whole hours on 'the advantages of silent meditation.'

If fresh milk does not agree with a child, boil it.

One or other of the candidates were before the electors every night.

Presented to Mr. . . . with the freedom of the borough of . . . in token of him as a statesman, orator, and man of letters.

After many days of arid desiccation the vapouring captains marshalled their thundering hosts and poured out upon scorching humanity and the thoroughly incinerated vegetation a few inches of *aqua pluvialis*.

On their return to the Villa Medicis they kicked further over the traces, so M. Hébert promulgated his edicts, which forbade the budding painters, sculptors, and musicians to wander at night around certain places contiguous to the academical groves wherein they might catch the Roman fever, to sit up late in their rooms, to refrain from employing certain objectional models and so on.

Their ideas are in some respects identical with the vegetarians.

The action and the attitude of the heroine show what are her feelings at this dread moment rather than the expression of her countenance.

> Sound was his claret and his head,
> Warm was his double ale and feelings.

They have been known even to destroy the monkey.

The West, however, is more prolific in women barbers than the East, and there used to be a pretty girl in Denver who manipulated the hirsute encumbrances of the cowboys and burly miners much to their satisfaction.

All our objections to a bonus of this description being classified as a genuine 'profit-sharing' scheme remains intact.

In this sad disordered state of nerves, he had laid down a prey to sudden starts.

I declare beforehand 'tis wrote only for the curious and inquisitive.

In the first years of this gentleman's life, and about the time when a

[1] The Admiralty replied, 'Report who carried away bowsprit and where it has been placed.'

superb saddle and bridle were purchased by him, it had been his manner, or vanity, or call it what you will, to run into the opposite extreme.

There is a fatality attends the actions of some men.

I had just time in my travels through Denmark with Mr. Noddy's eldest son, whom in the year 1741 I accompanied as governor, riding along with him at a prodigious rate through most parts of Europe, and of which original journey, performed by us two, a most delectable narrative will be given in the progress of this work . . .

It is high time to mention her again to him, merely to put him in mind that there is such a body still in the world, and whom upon the best judgment I can form upon my own plan at present, I am going to introduce to him for good and all.

Was I an absolute prince, I would appoint able judges at every avenue of my metropolis, who should take cognisance of every fool's business who came there.

Was your son called Judas, the sordid and treacherous idea so inseparable from the name would have accompanied him through life like his shadow.

What could be wanting in my father but to have wrote a book, to publish this notion of his to the world.

It was owing to a blow from a stone, broke off by a ball from the parapet of a horn-work at the siege of Namur.

I am of so nice and singular a humour that if I thought you was able to form the least judgment or probable conjecture to yourself of what was to come in the next page, I would tear it out of my book.

When his tobacco-pipe snapped short in the middle, he had nothing to do but to have taken hold of the two pieces, and throw them gently upon the back of the fire.

Obadiah had not got above threescore yards from the stable-yard before he met with Dr. Slop.

I would not depreciate what the study of the Literæ Humaniores at the University have done for me in that respect.

If I was a prince I would generously recompense the scientific head which brought forth such contrivances, yet I would as peremptorily suppress the use of them.

So, putting his pipe into his mouth, which he had just lighted, he contented himself with ordering Trim to read on.

But here he took a road of his own, setting up another Shandean hypothesis upon these corners-stones they had lain for him.

Directing the buccinatory muscles along his cheeks, and the orbicular muscles around his lips to do their duty, he whistled Lillibullero.

There was not a subject in the world upon which my father was so eloquent as that upon door-hinges.

Never, oh, never, may I lay down in their tents who cannot relax the

engine and feel pity for the force of education and the prevalence of opinions long derived from ancestors.

I have left my father lying across his bed, and uncle Toby in his old fringed chair, sitting beside him, and promised I would go back to them in half an hour.

'By all that is good and great, brother Toby,' said my father, 'if it was not for the aid of philosophy, which befriend one so much as they do you would put a man beside all temper.'

The colonists shot down the natives for killing the sheep as if they were birds.

The above is the Persian tradition, who date the cause and origin of their enmity to Greece from the destruction of Troy.

Agreeably to the will of his father Crœsus took possession of the throne, but destroyed this man who had opposed him with a fuller's instrument.

Their favourite resorts are the low islands in the river where they are seen basking in the sun, the most intense heat of which seems gratifying to them by numbers at a time.

It comes from Arabia to the temple bearing the dead body of its parent in myrrh which it buries.

Already several juvenile representatives of the population have been unable to withstand the temptation.

A martyr to the crowing of a too matutinal chanticleer applied for redress at the police court last week. Swiftly following the martyr in question comes the victim of the ululation of the canine species.

I proceed to lay down the rules to be observed in the conduct of metaphors and which are much the same for tropes of every kind.

Next comes a trap of great efficacy, but which answers better for mice than rats.

The enterprise I neither attempted to conceal from myself nor from him would be a dangerous one.

Comfortable ladies' and gentlemen's dining-rooms.

Of the byblus which is an annual plant after taking it from a marshy place where it grows they cut off the tops.

The man whom he employed with a dishonest view so artfully disposed one of the stones that two or even one person might remove it from its place.

They sent him five hundred minae of silver, which as soon as he received with his own hands he threw among his soldiers.

The moment that he heard the report like one deprived of all the powers of reason he commenced his march.

The sturdy blackamoor had to be put into the vehicle which was to convey him to the station almost by force.

Fresh sea mussels are therefore the only kind that should be eaten.

The children of the fine old cathedral city have as great a belief in the

bishop and his sack of toys as in St. Nicholas, Santa Claus, and any other beneficent personage of that ilk.

The first recorded maker of poetical valentines was the ill-fated troubadour, Prince Charles of Orleans, grandson of Charles V., the father of Louis XII., who was a prisoner in the Tower of London for twenty-five years.

I conclude you will read Mr. Thomson's 'Castle of Indolence'; it is after the manner of Spenser, but I think does not always keep so close to his style as the author of the 'Schoolmistress,' whose name I never knew till you were so good as to inform me of it. I think it a very charming poem and was very pleased with his ballad of 'Queen Elizabeth seeing the Milkmaid.'

He has been asked to pay a visit to Brussels, and if he accept he will be the guest of the King of the Belgians during his stay.

In all my travels I have never met with any one Scotchman but what was a man of sense; I believe, indeed, everybody of that country that has any leaves it as fast as they can.

You cannot walk to see your friends on crutches.

Whereas some evil-disposed person or persons having broken into the above mission-room and stolen the service Bible, the above reward will be offered for their apprehension.

Sir William Johnson's decease one year before the war broke out and who had great influence over the Six Nations was a great loss to British interests.

Do you see those black and white horses?

This plate has been engraved by Albert Dürer.

Valentine said, 'If I had wished a thing it would have been to have seen him here.'

Some of the sets seem to be built up with a solidity which make them look like actual buildings.

Every one of the murders of which we gave a list the other day were committed on the persons of the poor; and every one of the ransacked neighbourhoods mentioned in the *Pall Mall Gazette* were poor districts.

Henry had as good a claim to the throne as she did.

This question is to be wrangled over in every place that has a School Board every three years.

This week's work is more thorough than last week.

Everybody ought not to drink intoxicating drinks.

I maintain all the school buildings should be substantially well-built, having plenty of ventilation, well warmed during the cold seasons, thorough sanitation and with large playgrounds.

Where practicable, I am of opinion that rooms attached to School Board schools might be allowed for the use of the ratepayers.

While believing that every parent desires to pay his or her fair proportion of fees towards the education of their children, I would, in all cases,

be most liberal to those who from poverty, sickness, and other legitimate reasons are unable to pay them, by giving free education.

The most praiseworthy efforts of those who last year sought to alleviate the necessities of little ones in need and a continuance of such true philanthropy will receive from me every encouragement and support.

The present member and myself will have the pleasure of holding meetings in the various parts of the division, when we shall be able more fully to express our views, and be ready and willing to answer any questions, and trust thereby to secure your votes and interests.

If one candidate more than another deserves support it is that of Mr. G. C.

A strange man had struck her and then ran away.

My bachelor friend settles himself comfortably in an armchair, gives my companion a mock-heroic glance, closed his eyes, but never for one moment paused from caressing his moustache.

Thetford Liberals denounce the imbecile and savagely vindictive sentence on Mr. A. B., M.P., and expresses its unanimous sympathy for his brave wife.

That is an official obstruction as should be brought to the notice of the public.

They were in almost the exact form as those of the present day.

He was as unlike Wesley in everything as in doctrine.

Macklin ceased to belong to the drama when he was out of the world in his old age and his old Covent Garden house.

His faith was as perfectly orthodox as St. Paul himself.

The more than 14,000 examples sent in gave us great satisfaction, and even those which did not secure a prize bore testimony to the ability and patience with which their teachers had trained them.

Having got them for him he went out apparently for the station.

About a minute afterwards, while looking into the fire, the prisoner approached him from behind and dealt him some heavy blows about the hat and head.

In stature he would be quite six feet, he is of strong build, and he has a charming presence.

I haven't the heart to describe it further. Nor will I give unnecessary pain to a body of industrious men and women who have their living to get like the rest of us by discussing the cast in detail.

The earth is about half way between Mercury and Saturn in the matter of density. Mercury is of about the specific gravity of iron, while that of Saturn corresponds with that of cork in the matter of density and specific gravity.

He explained the nature of an explosion in a similar manner to that put by Mr. Moulton.

Wanted, a boy to open oysters with a reference.[1]

[1] The editor said that he did not believe it could be done.

The first item in the programme, for which Messrs. A. and B. were responsible, was a pianoforte solo.

It is strange that he should as he had by the pleadings deny the promise.

The mean temperature of St. Ives is only four degrees less than Rome.

Wanted, an experienced nurse to take charge of a young child, between thirty and thirty-five years old, of an unexceptionable character and good reference.

I paid the firm as well as my fellow waiters three shillings a week glass-money.

Be sure and try to keep the word *and* from coming too often.

Celia's boudoir who is dead with the daisies over her at Kensal Green is now the chamber where Delia is consulting Dr. Locock.

The company will not hold themselves responsible for the loss of any articles which are not distinctly marked before being sent, nor can we undertake to remove stains (as to do so bleaching is necessary) unless requested to do so, and then at customer's own risk only.

The wine being drank Mr. Douglas rose to leave.

I have merely rode from my friend, the admiral's, this morning.

After I have shook hands with Archie and been introduced to my new sister I shall enter on my office.

To the infinite mortification of both aunts and nieces the ball was broke up.

As she entered the room her olfactory nerves [why not *nose*?] were smote with odours not of Araby the blest.

He would have become a musician had not his parents forbade the project.

They have understood badly and wrote worse.

Even Sir Samson and Lady Maclaughlan were forgot.

Nothing but conversation was spoke in her house.

If my presence is disagreeable to you I shall immediately withdraw.

One likes to be agreed with by one's medical man.

He remarked that it was strange she should lay with her head in the middle of the bed, to which Mrs. Nottage replied it was through her laying on two pillows.

I do not know that my feelings amount to happiness neither.

I do not think that it was love neither.

No person must not enter.

There is no such thing as one slope neither in shorthand nor in long-hand.

Not till the reign of Henry V. was there any more fighting, who to please the people, renewed the war with France.

This is a type of the petty tyrants to which teachers have to bow down.

He spoke before the seven judges which constituted the court.

We halted occasionally to allow the infantry who had started some hours previously and which we had soon overtaken to come up with us.

It must be understood that the object of the department is to cause the public as much expense as possible and to disturb the leisure the female officers have for chattering with one another and engaging in flirtation with suitable persons on the other side of the counter as little as possible.

It was the duty of this body to clear the woods of any Turks who might be hanging about us.

On going into the cellar he found a large quantity of meat in a tub which was unfit for human food.

Bashful guest feeling embarrassed at being the only one partaking of tea . . .

She regulated the family which she took care to let everybody see; she was conductor of her nieces' education which she took care to let everybody hear.

It is remarked that Mr. Gladstone has in contemplation a literary task of some importance. The leader of the Liberal party has not lost at fourscore his keen interest either in the passing questions of the hour or the remote problems of antiquity.

And what did Bulgaria do? Why, sir, she stood up for her rights like a man.

Dr. A. W. stated that he knew deceased suffered from heart disease and was at the club when he arrived in the cab dead.

I am weary of sowing and never to reap.

All were equally ignorant of the language as we.

As his college course was drawing to a close in order to eke out his slender means he taught on two successive summers two small roadside schools.

The little poem sent us under the signature R. D. proves a literary theft and is the production of a gentleman in this neighbourhood already in print.

He was obliged to finish the house begun by his predecessor at an expense of about 10,000*l*.

The duke sat down smiling indulgently out of the way.

You would not be sorry that you had married me so many times.

By his horse taking fright and attempting to stop him he was struck by the shaft and knocked down.

He was charged with being drunk and made use of bad language.

Country teachers know quite as much if not more about teaching as their town brethren.

She was a widow woman.

They were surrounded on all sides.

They came to the lake and drowned themselves in the water.

The painting represents a portrait of St. Lawrence.

He bit me with his teeth.

He smiled to thank her as he took three tiny little sips.

They humbly asked of Him in heaven once more to meet again their own poor little Jim.

Perhaps this will satisfy Mr. Cole of whom I know nothing at all about.

None were sufficiently injured as to require assistance.

Here he stopped more suddenly even than usual for Mr. Meeson fixed him with his savage eye and then jerked himself out of the room to look for the document in question.

The sale of tickets only benefit.

For this trifling consideration thousands of lives are saved and their property secured to them.

If the Rev. B. K., a minister of the gospel of reconciliation, has ceased to believe in 'Overcome evil with evil' and fall back to 'An eye for an eye,' so be it.

I should have put these two together and let them fought it out.

Descending the western slope of the mountain the port of Ujiji lay below surrounded by palms.

Had some angel stopped and took him?

Lord St. Aldegonde who whether there were a fire or not always stood with his hands in his pockets moved discourteously among them.

That is a very pretty story indeed if it was only true.

Yet much I marvel that I cannot find no steps of mine imprinted in the earth.

The general had only lost his wife four days previously to his own death.

Liverpool is an important port whose commerce is almost equal to all the other ports put together.

I hope that everybody will understand my position and extend their consideration to me.

Their conduct was more like a wild Indian's than civilised people.

The stockings are much better than last year.

Wanted.—A sorrel colt suitable for a young lady with a long tail.

Wanted.—A man and his wife to look after a farm and a dairy with a religious turn of mind without incumbrance.

£5 Reward.—Whereas some person or persons stabbed my donkey on the 26th of January, and well known about the town, and has since died through the wound inflicted, I hereby offer the above reward to any person giving any information concerning the cruel deed.

The procession was very fine and nearly two miles in length as was also the sermon of the minister.

He called attention to the number of ownerless dogs about the streets, and urged that the police should have instructions to destroy them, or order dogs with owners to be muzzled.

The captain swam ashore from the vessel and subsequently saved the

life of the stewardess; she was insured for fifteen thousand dollars and was full of railroad iron.

During the celebration a child was run over, wearing a short red dress, which never spoke afterwards.

A man was knocked down at the station yesterday by a coal train while drunk.

On Sunday forenoon the dead body of a man was found lying on the railway between Bearsden and Maryhill in an unconscious state but still alive. He was conveyed to the Royal Infirmary, but on reaching that institution he expired.

MISCELLANEOUS SUBJECTS FOR COMPOSITION.[1]

(SET AT VARIOUS EXAMINATIONS.)

1. Instinct in animals. 2. A severe winter. 3. A mild winter. 4. Some recent invention. 5. Some public institution. 6. Your home enjoyments 7. Fresh air and its uses. 8. A farmyard. 9. Newspapers. 10. Economy of food. 11. Silver and its uses. 12. Town and country schools. 13. The months of the year. 14. Whale-fishing. 15. The river Thames. 16. Some outdoor school game. 17. The beauties of summer. 18. Your favourite walk. 19. Cleanliness. 20. The fox. 21. The advantages of early rising. 22. Healthy exercise. 23. Carnivorous animals. 24. The Indian Mutiny. 25. The Crimean War. 26. The American Civil War. 27. The French Revolution. 28. A storm. 29. Industry. 30. Energy. 31. The Siege of Troy. 32. The Crusades. 33. The Great Plague of London. 34. The Great Fire of London. 35. The Conquest of Mexico. 36. Westminster Abbey. 37. An Arctic expedition. 38. A railway-station. 39. A destructive fire. 40. The American War of Independence. 41. The Spanish Armada. 42 Cheap publications. 43. Temperate habits. 44. Punctuality. 45. Courage. 46. Fortitude. 47. A picture-gallery. 48. Cruelty to animals. 49. Unselfishness. 50. Childhood. 51. The cities of England. 52. The chief cities of the United States. 53. Savings and savings banks. 54. Ploughing. 55. A museum. 56. Clouds. 57. Liberty. 58. Free Trade and Protection. 59. The penny post. 60. The law of supply and demand. 61. The National Debt. 62. 'Right before might.' 63. Fishing. 64. Flower-

[1] See *Notes for Teachers*, Note 13 (δ).

gathering. 65. Sunshine. 66. The telescope. 67. A balloon. 68. Fruit-trees. 69. An election. 70. Birds of prey. 71. Birds and their nests. 72. The South Sea Scheme. 73. The Porteous mob. 74. Studies after school hours. 75. Money: its uses and abuses. 76. Some agricultural implement. 77. Habits of domestic animals. 78. Ready-money dealings. 79. The cultivation of music. 80. Gardening. 81. Discontent. 82. Patience. 83. Simplicity of language. 84. Self-control. 85. The force of example. 86. The benefits of exercise. 87. Singing birds. 88. Fairy tales. 89. Races of mankind. 90. Migration of birds. 91. Paper. 92. An umbrella. 93. An arch. 94. The herring. 95. A snowstorm. 96. The harvest. 97. Characteristics of the cat tribe. 98. Your favourite book. 99. The game of football.

100. The plan of some large town.
101. The best way of spending a summer whole holiday.
102. A voyage to Calcutta.
103. The natural advantages of the United States.
104. Description of the county in which your school is situated.
105. An exhibition of any kind you have read about or seen.
106. Amusements for young people.
107. An account of some book you have read.
108. The changes of fortune.
109. The progress of the English nation under the House of Lancaster.
110. A tale illustrating some popular proverb.
111. Adventurous voyagers of Queen Elizabeth's reign.
112. Pleasures of the imagination.
113. School life: its joys and difficulties.
114. The value of natural history as a study.
115. Some favourite female character.
116. Some favourite male character.
117. The cultivation of memory.
118. The advantages and disadvantages of emigration.
119. The natural advantages of Great Britain as a naval and commercial country.
120. Grammar compared with arithmetic as a mental exercise.
121. The advantages of recitation from memory.
122. How study of grammar strengthens judgment.
123. How knowledge of grammar controls language.
124. Effects of school discipline upon conduct out of school.
125. Value of self-denial in domestic life.
126. Peculiarities of the English climate.
127. The natural beauties of your own neighbourhood.
128. On books: how to choose and use them.
129. Knowledge the best kind of wealth.
130. Castles in the air.

131. 'Sweet are the uses of adversity.'

132. Write an essay on the principal advantages which an Englishman or Englishwoman possesses over a native of a tropical country such as Hindostan.

133. British exports and imports.

134. Time: its use and abuse.

135. The passing of an Act of Parliament.

136. A contrast between the life and associations of a mechanic in a large manufacturing town and those of a farm labourer in the country.

137. Masters and men: their rights and relations.

138. The position and prospects of the United States.

139. The good and evil effects that may be produced by theatres.

140. The four seasons: which do you prefer and why?

141. More haste, less speed.

142. Necessity is the mother of invention.

143. What can't be cured must be endured.

144. Well begun is half done.

145. All that glitters is not gold.

146. Evil communications corrupt good manners.

147. Honesty is the best policy.

148. A stitch in time saves nine.

149. Prevention is better than cure.

150. A rolling stone gathers no moss.

151. Make hay while the sun shines.

152. Birds of a feather flock together.

153. Knowledge is power.

154. Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves.

155. The advantage to be derived from an acquaintance with modern languages.

156. The disadvantages of being unable to read.

157. The differences between fashion and beauty.

158. Discuss the influence on mankind politically, morally, socially, and religiously of the invention of printing.

159. Life in town and country compared.

160. The influence of scenery on character.

161. Early signs of spring.

162. The arrangement of some public park or gardens.

163. The railway that passes through your neighbourhood.

164. Wages, and the reason why some people are better paid than others.

165. The difference between trades and professions.

166. Climate: its influence on people's occupations and characters.

167. Contrast the dog and the cat.

168. Write a letter detailing the chief events of last year.

169. Sketch the plot of any one of Shakespeare's plays.

170. Relate any anecdotes you may remember illustrating the sagacity of animals.

171. Write a description of any shipwreck of which you have read.

172. Write a sketch of Christmas time.

173. The advantages and disadvantages of a free press.

174. A description of the habits of the dog, the cat, the horse, or the cow.

175. A letter from a traveller by land or sea to a friend at home giving an account of a day's adventures.

176. How you may best help the poor.

177. Journal of a naturalist, one day.

178. Description of the place where you were born.

179. Write a letter to a friend stating what occupation you would prefer to follow and your reasons for preferring it.

180. State what sovereign of England between the Norman conquest and the beginning of the nineteenth century you consider to have been the most distinguished for ability and talents, and give your reasons for your answer.

181. Compare the relations of the colonies of Greece towards the mother-country and those of the English colonies towards England.

182. Describe some of the principal uses of water in nature and in art.

183. What are the advantages of studying Latin and Greek?

184. Give an account of the battle of Waterloo, with the circumstances that led to it and resulted from it.

185. Describe your own county in respect to its general aspect, its resources, and its most interesting buildings.

186. The good and evil effects that may be produced by works of fiction.

187. Sketch the plot of any one of Sir Walter Scott's poems or novels.

188. Supposing that a friend has written to ask you for some account of the school or schools at which you were brought up, write a letter in reply.

189. Write a short essay on music, painting, or architecture.

190. Write a short essay on the advantages that a nation derives from foreign commerce.

191. Write a letter to a friend who has asked you, 'Do you advise me to join a Volunteer rifle corps?'

192. 'Is there any use in my studying the classics if I am not intended for a learned profession?'

193. Write a short description of any picture, work of art, or scene in nature that may have interested you.

194. Describe the game of chess or cricket as you would to one that has never seen the game played.

195. Is war justifiable? State some of the obvious arguments on both sides and draw your own conclusion.

196. Write a short theme on the study of history, ancient and modern.

197. Write a letter to a friend describing the nature and purpose of the examination in which you are now engaged.

198. Write an account of any process of manufacture with which you are acquainted.

199. Write an examination of the right of an advocate in a Court of Justice to defend a cause that he knows to be unjust, or a criminal whom he knows to be guilty, and of the limits within which that right may be exercised.

200. Write a description of some newspaper, its contents, its machinery for publication and circulation, its moral and political influence, &c., such as you would give to a foreigner that had never seen it.

201. Describe, as in a letter to a friend, the town you know best.

202. Describe the effects of a storm.

203. Explain railway travelling, as to a person that had never seen nor heard of a railway.

204. Describe the town to which you have come to be examined.

205. Write a letter of domestic news, as to a friend or relative.

206. Write a letter giving an account of the country in the neighbourhood of which you live to a friend who has never seen it and is coming to live there.

207. Write the life of any eminent Englishman not now living.

208. Write a letter describing a journey you have taken.

209. Draw a comparison between this country now and fifty years ago.

210. Write an essay on the advantages of an Atlantic telegraph between England and America.

211. Sketch the life and character of (*a*) President Lincoln, (*b*) Oliver Cromwell, (*c*) George Washington, (*d*) Napoleon Buonaparte, (*e*) Nelson, (*f*) Wellington, (*g*) Julius Cæsar, (*h*) Queen Elizabeth, (*i*) Sir Thomas More, (*j*) Sir Philip Sidney, (*k*) Bacon, (*l*) Hannibal, (*m*) Pericles, (*n*) Cicero, (*o*) Clive, (*p*) Sir Isaac Newton, (*q*) Frederick the Great, (*r*) Marlborough, (*s*) William Pitt, Earl of Chatham, (*t*) Columbus, (*u*) Alfred the Great, (*v*) Joan of Arc.

212. Write an account of the life and works of (*a*) Shakespeare, (*b*) Milton, (*c*) Chaucer, (*d*) Pope, (*e*) Longfellow (*f*) Byron, (*g*) Wordsworth, (*h*) Spenser, (*i*) Macaulay, (*j*) Addison, (*k*) Goldsmith, (*l*) Johnson.

213. Our everyday food, the countries it comes from and the processes it has gone through.

214. The evils of drunkenness and the means by which these evils may be lessened.

215. The losses of the blind.

216. Write a letter describing how you spent your last holidays and how you would like to spend the next.

217. Articles of luxury.

218. Write an essay on the different sorts of entertainments for children and adults.

219. Write an essay describing the lives of the poor.

220. Which would you rather live in, the town or the country, and why?

221. Name any great traveller or explorer, and say what he did.

222. Lighthouses: structure, situation, and uses.

223. If you were going on a six months' journey on the Continent of Europe, what articles would you take with you, and why?

224. Shorthand, uses of.

225. The good and evil that have resulted from the introduction of gunpowder.

226. In what way has photography contributed to happiness and prosperity?

227. Compare the present with 'the good old times.'

228. Compare the pleasures of a journey (1) by rail, (2) walking, (3) cycling.

229. The Suez Canal: its construction and the changes that have resulted from it.

230. Description of any monument you have seen.

NOTES FOR TEACHERS.

(These refer to the whole work.)

---

1. (*a*) When teaching a boy to swim we do not begin with a long series of directions: we get him at once into the water and set him *doing* something. He gradually loses any nervousness which he may have felt; he learns to use his arms and legs by trying to use them, and what instruction we give is immediately profitable because it is given just when needed. I think we should follow a similar course in teaching composition—that we should at once let children begin to do something. When they have had some practice, first in forming, and then in combining easy sentences, they will feel confidence in their own powers and be ready to receive instruction in the choice and arrangement of words.

(*β*) A complete course of lessons in composition naturally divides itself into three parts—elementary practice, instruction in all that is necessary to correct writing, and instruction in all that is necessary to beautiful writing. The present book attempts to deal with only the first and second parts of such course. The third is omitted because the higher qualities of style,

> 'Like the march of soundless music
> Through the vision of the seer,
> More of feeling than of hearing,
> Of the heart than of the ear,'

can hardly be reduced to rules at all, and can certainly not be reduced to rules within the comprehension of young students.

(*γ*) Each teacher must decide for himself where his class should begin. When the pupils have had no practice in composition they should begin with the first exercise and go steadily on. Oral lessons in English may be made to prepare the way for formal lessons in composition if the children are required to form little sentences containing given parts of speech, or about given objects, or in answer to given questions.

(*δ*) It is a good plan, before setting the pupils to work an exercise

individually, to let the class work it collectively, the teacher writing the sentences on the black-board and showing how they can be improved.

2. No attempt has been made to introduce the refinements of punctuation,[1] as these are almost a matter of feeling rather than of teaching, and over-pointing is a common fault. When the exercises in the text have been worked it would be well for teachers, first, to let the children note how the stops are placed in a printed book, and then, making the necessary pauses, to dictate a few sentences to be punctuated.

3. The story in Exercise 28 (*b*) is told in simple sentences so that no point except the full stop may be needed. The same story is told in a less disjointed manner immediately afterwards. Children should be asked to compare the two styles of narration, and note the disagreeable effect of the first.

4. If the pupils have not now mastered the full stop, exercises similar to 28 and 29 should be set on the black-board.

5. Children cannot be expected to make bricks without straw—in other words, they cannot, at first, be expected to find both ideas and words. Till they have had considerable practice in making sentences and stringing them together it will be necessary to furnish them with the materials on which they are to work. The easiest material is a simple narrative, hence the choice of it for a beginning in continuous composition.

When the story to be reproduced has been read two or three times the teacher should ascertain by questioning that all the points have been properly apprehended, and that the order in which they come is remembered. It will then be well to let the class compose collectively. One child should be called upon to make up the first sentence. This sentence should be written on the black-board and, if necessary, criticised and amended. Another child should be called upon to make up the second sentence, and so on to the end. Then the board should be cleaned and each child be made to write his own version. Great pains must be taken with the correction of mistakes, and if any mistake be common, general attention should be called to it. If it is dealt with in the chapter headed 'Grammar' (p. 80), the exercise relating to it should be worked at once.

6. The writing of stories should be continued till the pupils show a fair amount of facility and accuracy. It is not supposed that the stories given in the text are enough for the teacher's purpose. They should be supplemented by stories from the fabulists, from ancient and modern

[1] The colon, for example, is omitted.

history, from the reading books of the junior classes, from the 'Percy Anecdotes,' and from some of the published collections of 'Stories for Composition.' A story should be read two or three times and, if necessary, explained.

7. Before children are told to develop an outline the teacher should ascertain that they understand it. They cannot tell a story clearly unless they see it clearly. To ensure familiarity, all the outlines in the text are taken from Æsop's fables.

8. Possibly some children who have developed all the outlines given will not yet be ready to proceed to the next section, but teachers will find no difficulty in furnishing as many more outlines as may be wanted. Here, as in every previous exercise, the black-board will be wanted.

9. The remarks of Archbishop Whately on the kind of composition exercises which should be set are so weighty and so practical that they ought to be quoted at length. He says:—

'The chief reason, probably, for the existing prejudice against technical systems of composition is to be found in the cramped, meagre and feeble character of most of such essays, etc., as are avowedly composed according to the rules of any such system. It should be remembered, however, in the first place, that these are almost invariably the productions of *learners*, it being usual for those who have attained proficiency, either to write without thinking of any rules, or to be desirous, and by their increased expertness, able, to conceal their employment of art. Now it is not fair to judge of the value of any system of rules—those of a drawing master for instance—from the first awkward sketches of tyros of the art. . . . But the circumstance which has mainly tended to produce the complaint alluded to, is, that in this case the reverse takes place of the plan pursued in the learning of other arts, in which it is usual to begin, for the sake of practice, with what is *easiest*; here, on the contrary, the tyro has usually a *harder* task assigned him, and one in which he is less likely to succeed, than he will meet with in the actual business of life. For it is undeniable that it is much the most difficult to find either propositions to maintain, or arguments to prove them—to know, in short, what to say, or how to say it—on any subject on which one has hardly any information and no interest; about which he knows little and cares still less.

'Now, the subjects usually proposed for school or college exercises are (to the learners themselves) precisely of this description, and hence it commonly happens that an exercise composed with diligent care by a young student, though it will have cost him far more pains than a *real* letter written by him to his friends, on subjects that interest him, will be very greatly inferior to it. On the *real occasions* of after life (I mean, when the object

proposed is, not to fill up a sheet, a book, or an hour, but to communicate his thoughts, to convince, or persuade), on these real occasions, for which such exercises were designed to prepare him, he will find that he writes both better, and with more facility than on the *artificial* occasion, as it may be called, of composing a declamation—that he has been attempting to learn the easier, by practising the harder. But what is worse, it will often happen that such exercises will have formed a habit of stringing together empty common-places and vapid declamations, of multiplying words and spreading out the matter thin, of composing in a stiff, artificial and frigid manner; and that this habit will more or less cling through life to one who has been thus trained, and will infect all his future compositions. So strongly, it should seem, was Milton impressed with a sense of this danger, that he was led to condemn the use altogether of exercises in composition. In this opinion he stands perhaps alone, among all writers on education. I should perhaps agree with him if there were absolutely no other remedy for the evil in question, for I am inclined to think that this part of education, if conducted as it often is, does in general more harm than good. But I am convinced that practice in composition, both for boys and young men, may be so conducted as to be productive of many and most essential advantages.

'The obvious and only preventive of the evils which I have been speaking of is a most scrupulous care in the selection of such *subjects* for exercises as are likely to be *interesting* to the student, and on which he has, (or may with pleasure and without much toil acquire) sufficient information; such subjects will of course vary, according to the learner's age and intellectual advancement, but they had better be rather below than much above him; that is, they should never be such as to induce him to string together vague, general expressions, conveying no distinct ideas to his own mind, and second-hand sentiments which he does not feel. He may freely transplant, indeed, from other writers, such thoughts as will take root in the soil of his own mind, but he must never be tempted to collect *dried specimens*. He must also be encouraged to express himself (in correct language indeed, but) in a free, natural and simple style, which of course implies (considering who and what the writer is supposed to be) such a style as, in itself, would be open to severe criticism, and certainly very unfit to appear in a book.

'Compositions on such subjects, and in such a style, would probably be regarded with a disdainful eye, as puerile, by those accustomed to the opposite mode of teaching. But it should be remembered that the compositions of boys *must* be puerile, in one way or the other; and to a person of unsophisticated and sound taste, the truly contemptible kind of puerility would be found in the other kind of exercises. Look at the letter of an intelligent youth to one of his companions, communicating intelligence of such petty matters as are interesting to both, describing the scenes he has visited, and the recreations he has enjoyed during a vacation, and you will

deviating from his original plan. It should serve merely as a *track* to mark out a path for him, not as a *groove* to confine him. But the practice of drawing out such a skeleton will give a coherence to the composition, a due *proportion* of its several parts, and a clear and easy arrangement of them such as can rarely be attained if one begins by completing one portion before thinking of the rest; and it will be found a most suitable exercise for a beginner, to practise—if possible, under the eye of a judicious lecturer—the drawing out of a great number of such skeletons, more than he subsequently fills up, and likewise to practise the analysing in the same way the compositions of another, whether read or heard.

'If the system which I have been recommending be pursued, with the addition of sedulous care in correction, encouragement from the teacher, and inculcation of such general rules as each occasion calls for, then, *and not otherwise*, exercises in composition will be of the most important and lasting advantage, not only in respect of the object *immediately* proposed, but in producing clearness of thought, and in giving play to all the faculties.'—*Elements of Rhetoric*, ed. 1882, p. 14.

10. In some books on composition the pupils are told to construct their little essays on a fixed plan. This method is open to several objections—one, that it must tend to make the style artificial. Naturalness is a quality too often wanting in childish essays and everything likely to discourage it should be carefully avoided.

11. A long list of subjects for essays is given in order that teachers may *select* from it. There is therefore no intention that all the subjects should be taken, and they need not be taken in the order in which they occur. The same remark applies to the list of subjects for letters.

12. (*α*) While the pupils are working through the section on Grammar, practice in composition should not cease. After each exercise a story, an essay, or a letter should be written.

(*β*) The plan of placing before children a number of mis-spelled words to be corrected is harmful, because it accustoms the eye to wrong forms, and often no reason beyond arbitrary fashion can be given to show why they are wrong. On the other hand, the plan of setting faulty sentences to be corrected is very useful, because the exercise calls pointed attention to errors which the pupil is likely to hear committed, and the reason why the sentence is wrong always admits of definite statement.

(*γ*) Only the grosser faults are pointed out in Part I.

13. (*α*) The Exercises in Part II. will consist (as the final Exercises in Part I. consisted) chiefly of faulty sentences to be corrected. The sources of these sentences are not indicated, because (1) young students

see a picture of the youth himself—boyish indeed in looks and in stature, in dress and in demeanour, but lively, unfettered, natural, giving a fair promise for manhood and, in short, what a boy should be. Look at a theme composed by the same youth, on '*Virtus est medium vitiorum*' or '*Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit*,' and you will see a picture of the same boy, dressed up in the garb, and absurdly aping the demeanour, of an elderly man. Our ancestors (and still more recently, I believe, the continental nations) were guilty of the absurdity of dressing up children in wigs, swords, huge buckles, hoops, ruffles, and all the elaborate full-dressed finery of the grown-up people of that day. It is surely reasonable that the analogous absurdity in greater matters also—among the rest in that part of education I am speaking of,—should be laid aside, and that we should in all points consider what is appropriate to each different period of life.

'The subjects for composition to be selected on the principle I am recommending will generally fall under one of three classes: first, subjects drawn from the studies the learner is engaged in; relating, for instance, to the characters or incidents of any history he may be reading, and sometimes, perhaps, leading him to forestall by conjecture something which he will hereafter come to in the book itself: secondly, subjects drawn from any conversation he may have listened to (with interest) from his seniors, whether addressed to himself or between each other: or thirdly, relating to the amusements, familiar occurrences, and everyday transactions which are likely to have formed the topics of easy conversation among his familiar friends. The student should not be confined exclusively to any one of these three classes of subjects; they should be intermingled in as much variety as possible, and the teacher should frequently recall to his own mind these two considerations: first, that since the benefit proposed does not consist in the intrinsic value of the composition, but in the *exercise* to the pupil's mind, it matters not how insignificant the subject may be, if it will but interest him, and thereby afford him such exercise: secondly, that the younger and backwarder each student is, the more unfit he will be for *abstract* speculations, and the less remote must be the subjects proposed, from those *individual* objects and occurrences which always form the first beginnings of the furniture of the youthful mind.

'It should be added as a practical rule for all cases, whether it be an exercise that is written for practice' sake or a composition on some real occasion, that an outline should first be drawn out—*skeleton* as it is sometimes called—of the substance of what is to be said. The more *briefly* this is done, so that it does but exhibit clearly the several heads of the composition, the better, because it is important that the whole of it be placed before the eye and mind in a small compass, and be taken in, as it were, at a glance, and it should be written therefore, not in *sentences*, but like a table of contents. Such an outline should not be allowed to *fetter* the writer, if in the course of the actual composition he find any reason for

might form too low an estimate of the worth of a writer when their attention was called only to the blemishes of his style, and (2) the sentences are not always quoted at length, words that have nothing to do with the fault under consideration being omitted.

(β) Some of the sentences given have been constructed or adapted for this book; many have been selected in the course of my own reading, and some have been borrowed from Lindley Murray's 'Grammar,' and from Hodgson's 'Errors in the Use of English' (a most interesting collection of examples).

(γ) Perhaps this is the most fitting place to say how much I am indebted also to

Blair's *Lectures on Rhetoric and Belles Lettres*
Whately's *Rhetoric*,
Bain's *Rhetoric and Composition*,
Alford's *Queen's English*,
Abbott's *How to Write clearly*, and
Cobbett's *Grammar*.

(δ) The Exercises in Part II. should be alternated with Exercises in Composition. A list of subjects for composition is given at the end of the book.

(ε) Some of the Exercises are set rather for warning than for working. It would not be reasonable to expect a student to go through those, for example, on foreign and on technical words; the attempt to re-write a very few of the sentences ought to be enough to show the grossness of the faults exhibited.

(ζ) By adopting a series of significant marks, and making the pupils enter them at the beginning of each note-book, teachers can save much time in the correction of exercises in composition. The following marks are suggested:—

Words mis-spelled. Draw a vertical line through the wrong letter.
Words omitted. A caret.
Words misplaced. Enclose in an ellipse.
Superfluous words. Enclose in square brackets.
Slipshod sentences. Cross in margin.

The corrections should be made with ink or pencil of a different colour from that used for the exercise.

14. The full treatment of synonyms would require a book to itself; here only the method of treatment can be indicated. Teachers who wish to pursue the subject further are recommended to procure Davidson's 'English Words Explained' (Longmans).

15. It would be well to work the greater part of this Exercise orally.

INDEX

(N.B.—INDEX TO COMPLETE WORK)

[*The numbers refer to the paragraphs*]

PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
LONDON